

# The package **witharrows** for plain-TeX and LaTeX\*

F. Pantigny  
fpantigny@wanadoo.fr

December 10, 2019

## Abstract

The LaTeX package **witharrows** provides environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}` similar to the environments `{aligned}` and `{align}` of **amsmath** but with the possibility to draw arrows on the right side of the alignment. These arrows are usually used to give explanations concerning the mathematical calculus presented.

In this document, we describe the LaTeX extension **witharrows** (however, **witharrows** can also be used with plain-TeX: see p. 21). This package can be used with **xelatex**, **lualatex**, **pdflatex** but also by the classical workflow **latex-dvips-ps2pdf** (or Adobe Distiller). This package loads the packages **expl3**, **l3keys2e**, **xparse**, **tikz** and the Tikz libraries **arrows.meta** and **bending**. The arrows are drawn with Tikz and that's why several compilations may be necessary.

This package provides an environment `{WithArrows}` to construct alignments of equations with arrows for the explanations on the right side:

```
$\begin{WithArrows} A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow[we expand] \\ & = a^2 + 2a + 1 % don't put \\ here \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we expand}$$

The arrow has been drawn with the command `\Arrow` on the row from which it starts. The command `\Arrow` must be used in the second column (the best way is to put it at the end of the second cell of the row as in the previous example).

The environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of **amsmath** (and **mathtools**). The extension **witharrows** also provides an environment `{DispWithArrows}` which is similar to the environment `{align}` of **amsmath**: cf. p. 16.

## 1 Options for the shape of the arrows

The command `\Arrow` has several options. These options can be put between square brackets, before, or after the mandatory argument.

The option `jump` gives the number<sup>1</sup> of rows the arrow must jump (the default value is, of course, 1).

```
$\begin{WithArrows} A & = \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow[jump=2]{we expand} \\ & = (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) +1 \\ & = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b +1 \end{WithArrows}$
```

---

\*This document corresponds to the version 2.2 of **witharrows**, at the date of 2019/12/10.

<sup>1</sup>It's not possible to give a non-positive value to `jump`. See below (p. 2) the way to draw an arrow which goes backwards.

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\
 &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \text{we expand}$$

It's possible to put several arrows which start from the same row.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \> \text{\Arrow{} \Arrow{} [jump=2]} \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\
 &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\
 &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \downarrow$$

The option `xoffset` shifts the arrow to the right (we usually don't want the arrows to be stucked on the text). The initial value of `xoffset` is 3 mm.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\ \> \text{\Arrow[xoffset=1cm] {with \texttt{xoffset=1cm}}} \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= ((a+b)+1)^2 \\
 &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \downarrow \text{with } \texttt{xoffset=1cm}$$

The arrows are drawn with Tikz. That's why the command `\Arrow` has an option `tikz` which can be used to give to the arrow (in fact, the command `\path` of Tikz) the options proposed by Tikz for such an arrow. The following example gives an thick arrow.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= (a+1)^2 \> \text{\Arrow[tikz=thick] {we expand}} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= (a+1)^2 \\
 &= a^2 + 2a + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

It's also possible to change the arrowheads. For example, we can draw an arrow which goes backwards with the Tikz option `<-`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= (a+1)^2 \> \text{\Arrow[tikz=<-] {we factorize}} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= (a+1)^2 \\
 &= a^2 + 2a + 1
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \uparrow \text{we factorize}$$

It's also possible to suppress both tips of the arrow with the Tikz option “-”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= (a+1)^2 \> \text{\Arrow[tikz=-] {very classical}} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad ) \text{ very classical}$$

In order to have straight arrows instead of curved ones, we must use the Tikz option “`bend left = 0`”.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow[tikz={bend left=0}]{we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand}$$

In fact, it's possible to change more drastically the shape or the arrows with the option `tikz-code` (presented p. 21).

It's possible to use the Tikz option “`text width`” to control the width of the text associated to the arrow.<sup>2</sup>

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \\ \Arrow[jump=2,tikz={text width=5.3cm}]{We have done...} \\ &= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = ((a + b) + 1)^2 \\ = (a + b)^2 + 2(a + b) + 1 \\ = a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{We have done a two-stages expansion} \\ \text{but it would have been clever to ex-} \\ \text{pand with the multinomial theorem.} \end{array} \right.$$

In the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`, there is an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the labels are automatically wrapped on the right: see p. 18.

If we want to change the font of the text associated to the arrow, we can, of course, put a command like `\bfseries`, `\large` or `\sffamily` at the beginning of the text. But, by default, the texts are composed with a combination of `\small` and `\itshape`. When adding `\bfseries` at the beginning of the text, we won't suppress the `\small` and the `\itshape` and we will consequently have a text in a bold, italic and small font.

```
$\begin{WithArrows} \\ A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{\bfseries we expand} \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \\ \end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad ) \text{ we expand}$$

It's possible to put commands `\\\` in the text to force new lines<sup>3</sup>. However, if we put a `\\\`, a command of font placed in the beginning of the text will have effect only until the first command `\\\` (like in an environment `{tabular}`). That's why Tikz gives an option `font` to modify the font of the whole text. Nevertheless, if we use the option `tikz={font={\bfseries}}`, the default specification of `\small` and `\itshape` will be overwritten.

---

<sup>2</sup>It's possible to avoid the hyphenations of the words: use the Tikz option “`align = flush left`” in LaTeX and “`align = {flushleft,nohyphenated}`” in ConTeXt.

<sup>3</sup>By default, this is not possible in a Tikz node. However, in `witharrows`, the nodes are created with the option `align=left`, and, thus, it becomes possible.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow[tikz={font=\bfseries}]{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a+1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \text{we expand}$$

If we want exactly the same result as previously, we have to give to the option `font` the value `\itshape\small\bfseries`.

The options can be given directly between square brackets to the environment `{WithArrows}`. There must be no space between the `\begin{WithArrows}` and the opening bracket (`[`) of the options of the environment. Such options apply to all the arrows of the environment.<sup>4</sup>

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\tikz=blue]
A &= \bigl((a+b)+1\bigr)^2 \Arrow{first expansion.} \\
&= (a+b)^2 + 2(a+b) + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{first expansion.} \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 + 2a + 2b + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{second expansion.}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

The environment `{WithArrows}` has an option `displaystyle`. With this option, all the elements are composed in `\displaystyle` (like in an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`).

Without the option `displaystyle`:

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
\int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx
&= \int_0^1 (x^2+2x+1) dx
\Arrow{linearity of integration} \\
&= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \\
&= \frac{1}{3} + 2\frac{1}{2} + 1 \\
&= \frac{7}{3}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2+2x+1) dx \\ &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \quad \text{linearity of integration} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} + 2\frac{1}{2} + 1 \\ &= \frac{7}{3} \end{aligned}$$

The same example with the option `displaystyle`:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 (x+1)^2 dx &= \int_0^1 (x^2+2x+1) dx \\ &= \int_0^1 x^2 dx + 2 \int_0^1 x dx + \int_0^1 1 dx \quad \text{linearity of integration} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} + 2\frac{1}{2} + 1 \\ &= \frac{7}{3} \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>4</sup>They also apply to the nested environments `{WithArrows}` (with the logical exceptions of `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`).

Almost all the options can also be set at the document level with the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. In this case, the scope of the declarations is the current TeX group (these declarations are “semi-global”). For example, if we want all the environments `{WithArrows}` composed in `\displaystyle` with blue arrows, we can write `\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}`.<sup>5</sup>

```
\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle,tikz=blue}
$\begin{WithArrows}
\sum_{i=1}^n (x_{i+1})^2
& = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_{i+1}) \Arrow{by linearity} \\
& = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2\sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \quad \text{by linearity}$$

The command `\Arrow` is recognized only in the environments `{WithArrows}`. If we have a command `\Arrow` previously defined, it's possible to go on using it outside the environments `{WithArrows}`. However, a previously defined command `\Arrow` may still be useful in an environment `{WithArrows}`. If we want to use it in such an environment, it's possible to change the name of the command `\Arrow` of the package `witharrows`: there is an option `command-name`<sup>6</sup> for this purpose. The new name of the command must be given to the option *without* the leading backslash.

```
\NewDocumentCommand {\Arrow} {} {\longmapsto}
$\begin{WithArrows} [\text{command-name}=Explanation]
f &= \bigl(x \Arrow (x+1)^2\bigr) \\
\Explanation{we work directly on functions} \\
&= \bigl(x \Arrow x^2+2x+1\bigr)
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} f &= (x \longrightarrow (x+1)^2) \\ &= (x \longrightarrow x^2 + 2x + 1) \end{aligned} \quad \text{we work directly on functions}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` provides also two options `code-before` and `code-after`<sup>7</sup> for LaTeX code that will be executed at the beginning and at the end of the environment. These options are not designed to be hooks (they are available only at the environment level and they do not apply to the nested environments).

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [\text{code-before} = \color{blue}]
A &= (a+b)^2 \Arrow{\text{we expand}} \\
&= a^2 + 2ab + b^2
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a + b)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2ab + b^2 \end{aligned} \quad \text{we expand}$$

Special commands are available in `code-after`: a command `\WithArrowsNbLines` which gives the number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (this is a command and not a counter), a special form of the command `\Arrow` and the command `\MultiArrow`: these commands are described in the section concerning the nested environments, p. 12.

---

<sup>5</sup>It's also possible to configure `witharrows` by modifying the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` which is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow. For example, to have the labels in blue with roman (upright) types, one can use the following instruction: `\tikzset{WithArrows/arrow/.append style = {blue,font = {\rmfamily}}}`.

<sup>6</sup>For historical reasons, there is an alias for this option: `CommandName`.

<sup>7</sup>For historical reasons, there are aliases for these options: `CodeBefore` and `CodeAfter`.

## 2 Numbers of columns

So far, we have used the environment `{WithArrows}` with two columns. However, it's possible to use the environment with an arbitrary number of columns with the option `format`. The value given to this option is like the preamble of an environment `{array}`, that is to say a sequence of letters `r`, `c` and `l`. The initial value of the option `format` is, in fact, `rl`.

For exemple, if we want only one column left-aligned, we use the option `format=l`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\text{format} = \text{l}]\\
f(x) \geq g(x) \Arrow{by squaring both sides} \\ 
f(x)^2 \geq g(x)^2 \Arrow{by moving to left side} \\ 
f(x)^2 - g(x)^2 \geq 0
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{array}{ll} f(x) \geq g(x) & \text{by squaring both sides} \\ f(x)^2 \geq g(x)^2 & \text{by moving to left side} \\ f(x)^2 - g(x)^2 \geq 0 & \end{array}$$

In the following example, we use five columns all centered (the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` is presented p. 16).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[\text{format} = \text{ccccc},\\
\text{wrap-lines},\\
\text{tikz} = \{\text{align} = \text{flush left}\},\\
\text{interline}=1mm]\\
k & \text{\textless;} \text{\textleq;} & t & \text{\textless;} \text{\textleq;} & k+1 \\ \\
\frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \frac{1}{t} & \leq & \frac{1}{k}
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
k & \leq & t & \leq & k+1 \\
\frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \frac{1}{t} & \leq & \frac{1}{k} \\
\int\limits_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k+1} & \leq & \int\limits_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{t} & \leq & \int\limits_k^{k+1} \frac{dt}{k} & \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{we can integrate the} \\ \text{inequalities since } k \leq k+1 \end{array} \right. \\
\frac{1}{k+1} & \leq & \ln(k+1) - \ln(k) & \leq & \frac{1}{k}
\end{array}$$

## 3 Precise positioning of the arrows

The environment `{WithArrows}` defines, during the composition of the array, two series of nodes materialized in red in the following example.<sup>8</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup>The option `show-nodes` can be used to materialize the nodes. The nodes are in fact Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle”, but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts at the *south* anchor of the first node and arrives at the *north* anchor of the second node.

$$\begin{aligned}
I &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln(1 + \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} - u))(-du) \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} - u))du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
&= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
&= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
\end{aligned}$$

The nodes of the left are at the end of each line of text. These nodes will be called *left nodes*. The nodes of the right side are aligned vertically on the right side of the array. These nodes will be called *right nodes*.

By default, the arrows use the right nodes. We will say that they are in **rr** mode (*r* for *right*). These arrows are vertical (we will say that an arrow is *vertical* when its two ends have the same abscissa).

However, it's possible to use the left nodes, or a combination of left and right nodes, with one of the options **lr**, **rl** and **ll** (*l* for *left*). Those arrows are, usually, not vertical.

Therefore  $I = \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^0 \ln(1 + \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} - u))(-du)$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan(\frac{\pi}{4} - u))du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(1 + \frac{1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{1 + \tan u + 1 - \tan u}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln\left(\frac{2}{1 + \tan u}\right) du \\
&= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (\ln 2 - \ln(1 + \tan u)) du \\
&= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \ln(1 + \tan u) du \\
&= \frac{\pi}{4} \ln 2 - I
\end{aligned}$$

There is also an option called **i** (*i* for *intermediate*). With this option, the arrow is vertical and at the leftmost position.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
(a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib)
&= (a+b)(a-b)\cdot(a+ib)(a-ib) \\
&= (a^2-b^2)(a^2+b^2) \Arrow[i]{because (x-y)(x+y)=x^2-y^2} \\
&= a^4-b^4
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 (a+b)(a+ib)(a-b)(a-ib) &= (a+b)(a-b) \cdot (a+ib)(a-ib) \\
 &= (a^2 - b^2)(a^2 + b^2) \\
 &= a^4 - b^4
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \Bigg) \text{ because } (x-y)(x+y) = x^2 - y^2$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `group` option. With this option, *all* the arrows of the environment are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows}[displaystyle,group]
2xy'-3y=\\sqrt x
& \\Longleftrightarrow 2x(K'y_0+Ky_0')-3Ky_0 = \\sqrt x \\\\
& \\Longleftrightarrow 2xK'y_0 + K(2xy_0'-3y_0) = \\sqrt x \\\\
& \\Longleftrightarrow 2x K'y_0 = \\sqrt x \\Arrow{...}\\\
...
\\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}
 2xy' - 3y = \sqrt{x} &\iff 2x(K'y_0 + Ky'_0) - 3Ky_0 = \sqrt{x} \\
 &\iff 2xK'y_0 + K(2xy'_0 - 3y_0) = \sqrt{x} \\
 &\iff 2xK'y_0 = \sqrt{x} \\
 &\iff 2xK'x^{\frac{3}{2}} = x^{\frac{1}{2}} \\
 &\iff K' = \frac{1}{2x^2} \\
 &\iff K = -\frac{1}{2x}
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we replace } y_0 \text{ by its value} \\ \text{simplification of the } x \\ \text{antiderivation} \end{array}$$

The environment `{WithArrows}` gives also a `groups` option (with a *s* in the name). With this option, the arrows are divided into several “groups”. Each group is a set of connected<sup>9</sup> arrows. All the arrows of a given group are grouped on a same vertical line and at a leftmost position.

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= B \\
 &= C + D \\
 &= D' \\
 &= E + F + G + H + I \\
 &= K + L + M \\
 &= N \\
 &\equiv O
 \end{aligned}
 \quad \begin{array}{l}
 \text{one} \\
 \text{two} \\
 \text{three} \\
 \text{four}
 \end{array}$$

In an environment which uses the option `group` or the option `groups`, it's still possible to give an option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) to an individual arrow<sup>10</sup>. Such arrow will be drawn irrespective of the groups. It's also possible to start a new group by applying the option `new-group` to an given arrow.

If desired, the option **group** or the option **groups** can be given to the command `\WithArrowsOptions` so that it will become the default value. In this case, it's still possible to come back to the default behaviour for a given environment `\begin{WithArrows}` with the option `rr: \begin{WithArrows}[rr]`

In the following example, we have used the option `groups` for the environment and the option `new-group` for the last arrow (that's why the last arrow is not aligned with the others).

<sup>9</sup>More precisely: for each arrow  $a$ , we note  $i(a)$  the number of its initial row and  $f(a)$  the number of its final row; for two arrows  $a$  and  $b$ , we say that  $a \sim b$  when  $[i(a), f(a)] \cap [i(b), f(b)] \neq \emptyset$ ; the groups are the equivalence classes of the transitive closure of  $\sim$ .

<sup>10</sup>Such an arrow will be called *independent* in the technical documentation.

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\cos kx}{\cos^k x} &= \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{\Re(e^{ikx})}{(\cos x)^k} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^n \Re\left(\frac{e^{ikx}}{(\cos x)^k}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^k\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(\frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}\right)^{n+1}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{1 - \frac{e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^{n+1} x}}{1 - \frac{e^{ix}}{\cos x}}\right) \\
&= \Re\left(\frac{\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos^n x}}{\cos x - e^{ix}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - e^{i(n+1)x}}{\cos x - e^{ix}}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{\cos^{n+1} x - (\cos(n+1)x + i \sin(n+1)x)}{\cos x - (\cos x + i \sin x)}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \Re\left(\frac{(\cos^{n+1} x - \cos(n+1)x) - i \sin(n+1)x}{-i \sin x}\right) \\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^n x} \cdot \frac{\sin(n+1)x}{\sin x}
\end{aligned}$$

↓ (cos x)<sup>k</sup> is real  
 ↓ Re(z + z') = Re(z) + Re(z')  
 ↓ sum of terms of a geometric progression  
 ↓ algebraic calculation  
 ↓ reduction to common denominator  
 ↓ Re(kz) = k · Re(z) if k is real  
 ↓ algebraic form of the complexes

## 4 The options “up” and “down” for individual arrows

At the local level, there are also two options for individual arrows, called “up” and “down”. The following example illustrates these types of arrows:

```
\(\begin{WithArrows}
A &= B
\Arrow[up]{an arrow of type \texttt{up}}{& = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C}
\Arrow[down]{an arrow of type \texttt{down}}{& = C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C}
\end{WithArrows}\)
```

$$\begin{aligned}
A = B &\xrightarrow{\quad \text{an arrow of type up} \quad} \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \downarrow \\
&= C + C + C + C + C + C + C + C \\
&= E + E \xleftarrow{\quad \text{an arrow of type down} \quad}
\end{aligned}$$

The options `up` and `down` require the package `varwidth` and the Tikz library `calc`. If they are not loaded, an error will be raised.

## 5 Comparison with the environment {aligned}

`{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of the extension `amsmath`. These are only similarities because `{WithArrows}` has not been written upon the environment `{aligned}`.<sup>11</sup>

As in the environments of `amsmath`, it's possible to change the spacing between two given rows with the option of the command `\backslash\backslash` of end of line (it's also possible to use `\backslash\backslash*` but it has exactly the same effect as `\backslash\backslash` since an environment `{WithArrows}` is always unbreakable). This option is designed to be used with positive values only.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}%
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\[2ex]
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} A &= (a+1)^2 \\ &= a^2 + 2a + 1 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we expand} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array}$$

In the environments of `amsmath` (or `mathtools`), the spacing between rows is fixed by a parameter called `\jot` (it's a dimension and not a skip). That's also the case for the environment `{WithArrows}`. An option `jot` has been given to the environment `{WithArrows}` in order to change the value of this parameter `\jot` for a given environment.<sup>12</sup>

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\displaystyle,jot=2ex]%
F &= \frac{1}{2}G \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we expand} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array} \\
&= H + \frac{1}{2}K \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we go on} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array} \\
&= K
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \frac{1}{2}G \\ &= H + \frac{1}{2}K \\ &= K \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we expand} \\ \text{we go on} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array}$$

However, this new value of `\jot` will also be used in other alignments included in the environment `{WithArrows}`:

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\jot=2ex]%
\varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\
&\And \{x,y\} \text{ are real} \\
&\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad \begin{array}{l} x \text{ and } y \text{ are real} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} x+y = 0 \\ x+2y = 0 \end{array} \right. \end{aligned} \quad \begin{array}{l} x \text{ and } y \text{ are real} \\ \curvearrowright \end{array}$$

---

<sup>11</sup>In fact, it's possible to use the package `witharrows` without the package `amsmath`.

<sup>12</sup>It's also possible to change `\jot` with the environment `{spreadlines}` of `mathtools`.

Maybe this doesn't correspond to the desired outcome. That's why an option `interline` is proposed. It's possible to use a skip (=glue) for this option.

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows} [interline=2ex]
\\varphi(x,y) = 0 & \\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0
\\Arrow{$x$ and $y$ are real}\\\
& \\Leftrightarrow \\left\\{
\\begin{aligned}
x+y &= 0 \\\\
x+2y &= 0 \\\\
\\end{aligned}
\\right.
\\right.
\\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+y)^2 + (x+2y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x+y=0 \\ x+2y=0 \end{cases} \quad \underbrace{\qquad\qquad\qquad}_{x \text{ and } y \text{ are real}}\end{aligned}$$

Like the environment `{aligned}`, `{WithArrows}` has an option of placement which can assume the values `t`, `c` or `b`. However, the initial value is not `c` but `t`. If desired, it's possible to have the `c` value as the default with the command `\WithArrowsOptions{c}` at the beginning of the document.

```

So\enskip
$\begin{WithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$

```

$$\text{So } A = (a+1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \Big) \text{ we expand}$$

The value `c` may be useful, for example, if we want to add curly braces:

```

Let's set\enskip \$\left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\begin{WithArrows}[c]
f(x) & = 3x^3+2x^2-x+4 \\
\Arrow[tikz=-]{both} \text{ are polynoms} \\
g(x) & = 5x^2-5x+6
\end{WithArrows}
\right. \$

```

Let's set  $\begin{cases} f(x) = 3x^3 + 2x^2 - x + 4 \\ g(x) = 5x^2 - 5x + 6 \end{cases}$  both are polynomials

Unlike `{aligned}`, the environment `{WithArrows}` uses `\textstyle` by default. Once again, it's possible to change this behaviour with `\WithArrowsOptions`:

\WithArrowsOptions{displaystyle}.

The following example is composed with `{aligned}`:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ \quad = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{array} \right.$$

The following is composed with `{WithArrows}[c,displaystyle]`. The results are strictly identical.<sup>13</sup>

$$\left\{ \begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + 1)^2 &= \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i^2 + 2x_i + 1) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 + 2 \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + n \end{aligned} \right.$$

## 6 Arrows in nested environments

The environments `{WithArrows}` can be nested. In this case, the options given to the encompassing environment applies also to the inner ones (with logical exceptions for `interline`, `code-before` and `code-after`). The command `Arrow` can be used as usual in each environment `{WithArrows}`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}
\varphi(x,y)=0
& \Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \Arrow{the numbers are real} \\
& \Leftrightarrow
\left\{ \begin{aligned}
x+2y &= 0 \\
2x+4y &= 0
\end{aligned} \right. \Arrow{tikz=-}{the same equation} \\
\end{WithArrows} \\
\begin{WithArrows}
x+2y &= 0 \Arrow[tikz=-]{tikz=-}{the same equation} \\
x+2y &= 0
\end{WithArrows} \\
\Leftrightarrow x+2y=0
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{aligned} x+2y &= 0 \\ 2x+4y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right. \text{ } \begin{array}{l} \text{the numbers are real} \\ \downarrow \end{array} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{aligned} x+2y &= 0 \\ x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right. \text{ } \begin{array}{l} \text{the same equation} \\ \downarrow \end{array} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0 \end{aligned}$$

However, one may want to draw an arrow between rows that are not in the same environment. For example, one may want to draw the following arrow :

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi(x,y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2 + (2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{aligned} x+2y &= 0 \\ 2x+4y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right. \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{aligned} x+2y &= 0 \\ x+2y &= 0 \end{aligned} \right. \text{ } \begin{array}{l} \text{division by 2} \\ \downarrow \end{array} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x+2y = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Such a construction is possible by using `\Arrow` in the `code-after` option. Indeed, in `code-after`, a special version of `\Arrow` is available (we will call it “`\Arrow` in `code-after`”).

A command `\Arrow` in `code-after` takes three arguments :

- a specification of the start row of the arrow ;
- a specification of the end row of the arrow ;

---

<sup>13</sup>In versions of `amsmath` older than the 5 nov. 2016, a thin space was added on the left of an environment `{aligned}`. The new versions do not add this space and neither do `{WithArrows}`.

- the label of the arrow.

As usual, it's also possible to give options within square brackets before or after the three arguments. However, these options are limited (see below).

The specification of the row is constructed with the position of the concerned environment in the nesting tree, followed (after an hyphen) by the number of the row.

In the previous example, there are two environments `{WithArrows}` nested in the main environment `{WithArrows}`.

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 1} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{environment number 2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0\end{aligned}$$

The arrow we want to draw starts in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 1 (and therefore, the specification is 1-2) and ends in the row 2 of the sub-environment number 2 (and therefore, the specification is 2-2). We can draw the arrow with the following command \Arrow in code-after :

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows}[code-after = \\Arrow{1-2}{2-2}{division by \$2\$} ]
\\varphi(x,y)=0
& \\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\\end{WithArrows}

```

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0\end{aligned}$$

The options allowed for a command `\Arrow in code-after` are: `ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr`, `v`, `xoffset`, `tikz` and `tikz-code`. Except `v`, which is specific to `\Arrow in code-after`, all these options have their usual meaning.

With the option `v`, the arrow drawn is vertical to an abscissa computed with the start row and the end row only : the intermediate lines are not taken into account unlike with the option `i`. Currently, the option `i` is not available for the command `\Arrow` in code-after. However, it's always possible to translate an arrow with `xoffset` (or `xshift` of Tikz).

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows}[code-after=\\Arrow[v]{1-2}{2-2}{division by \$2\$}]
\\varphi(x,y)=0
& \\Leftrightarrow (x+2y)^2+(2x+4y)^2 = 0 \\
.....
\\end{WithArrows}$

```

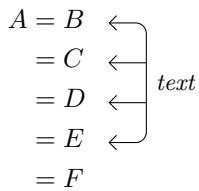
$$\begin{aligned}\varphi(x, y) = 0 &\Leftrightarrow (x + 2y)^2 + (2x + 4y)^2 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ 2x + 4y = 0 \end{cases} \\ &\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + 2y = 0 \\ x + 2y = 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{division by 2} \\ &\Leftrightarrow x + 2y = 0\end{aligned}$$

The package `witharrows` gives also another command available only in `code-after`: the command `\MultiArrow`. This command draws a “rak”. The list of the rows of the environment concerned by this rak are given in the first argument of the command `\MultiArrow`. This list is given with the syntax of the list in a `\foreach` command of `pgffor`.

```

\$\\begin{WithArrows}[tikz = rounded corners,
                      code-after = {\\MultiArrow{1,...,4}{text}} ]
A & = B \\
& = C \\
& = D \\
& = E \\
& = F
\\end{WithArrows}$

```



As of now, there is no option available for the command `\MultiArrow` (maybe in a future release).

## 7 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}

If someone wants to draw arrows from outside the environments `\WithArrows`, he can use the Tikz nodes created in the environments.

The Tikz name of a node created by `witharrows` is prefixed by `wa-`. Then, we have a list of numbers which give the position in the nesting tree and the row number in the environment. At the end, we have the suffix `l` for a “left node” and `r` for a “right node”.

For illustrative purposes, we give an example of nested environments `{WithArrows}`, and, for each “right node”, the name of that node.<sup>14</sup>

The package `witharrows` provides some tools facilitating the use of these nodes:

- the command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` gives the number of the last environment of level 0 (*i.e.* which is not included in another environment of the package `witharrows`);
  - a name can be given to a given environment with the option `name` and, in this case, the nodes created in the environment will have aliases constructed with this name;
  - the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow` is the style used by `witharrows` when drawing an arrow<sup>15</sup>;

---

<sup>14</sup>There is an option `show-node-names` to show the names of these nodes.

<sup>15</sup>More precisely, this style is given to the Tikz option “`every path`” before drawing the arrow with the code of the option `tikz-code`. This style is modified (in TeX scopes) by the option `tikz` of `witharrows`.

- the Tikz style `WithArrows/arrow/tips` is the style for the tip of the arrow (loaded by `WithArrows/arrow`).

For example, we can draw an arrow from `wa-40-2-1-2-r.south` to `wa-40-3-2-r.north` with the following Tikz command.

```
\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
 ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-2-1-2-r.south)
 to ([xshift=3mm]wa-\WithArrowsLastEnv-3-2-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &\lhd B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B + B \\
 &\lhd \left\{ \begin{array}{l} C \lhd D \\ E \lhd F \end{array} \right. \\
 &\lhd \left\{ \begin{array}{l} G \lhd H + H + H + H + H + H + H \\
 I \lhd \left\{ \begin{array}{l} J \lhd K \\ L \lhd M \end{array} \right. \end{array} \right. \\
 &\lhd \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N \lhd O \\ P \lhd Q \end{array} \right. \quad \curvearrowleft
 \end{aligned}$$

In this case, it would be easier to use a command `\Arrow` in `code-after` but this is an example to explain how the Tikz nodes created by `witharrows` can be used.

In the following example, we create two environments `{WithArrows}` named “first” and “second” and we draw a line between a node of the first and a node of the second.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[\name=first]
A & = B \\
& = C
\end{WithArrows}$

\bigskip
$\begin{WithArrows}[\name=second]
A' & = B' \\
& = C'
\end{WithArrows}$

\begin{tikzpicture}[remember picture,overlay]
\draw [WithArrows/arrow]
 ([xshift=3mm]first-1-r.south)
 to ([xshift=3mm]second-1-r.north) ;
\end{tikzpicture}
```

$$\begin{array}{c}
 A = B \\
 = C \\
 \\[-1ex]
 A' = B' \\
 = C'
 \end{array}
 \quad \curvearrowleft$$

## 8 The environment {DispWithArrows}

As previously said, the environment `{WithArrows}` bears similarities with the environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath` (and `mathtools`). This extension also provides an environment `{DispWithArrows}` which is similar to the environments `{align}` and `{flalign}` of `amsmath`.

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` must be used *outside* math mode. Like `{align}`, it should be used in horizontal mode.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad (2)$$

It's possible to use the command `\notag` (or `\nonumber`) to suppress a tag.

It's possible to use the command `\tag` to put a special tag (e.g.  $\star$ ).

It's also possible to put a label to the line of an equation with the command `\label`.

These commands must be in the second column of the environment.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag{$\star$} \label{my-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad (\star) \quad (2)$$

A link to the equation  $(\star)$ .<sup>16</sup>

If `amsmath` (or `mathtools`) is loaded, it's also possible to use `\tag*` which, as in `amsmath`, typesets the tag without the parentheses. For example, it's possible to use it to put the symbol `\square` of `amssymb`. This symbol is often used to mark the end of a proof.<sup>17</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \notag \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1 \tag*{$\square$}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad (1)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \downarrow \text{we expand} \quad \square \quad (2)$$

It's also possible to suppress all the autogenerated numbers with the boolean option `notag` (or `nonumber`), at the global or environment level. There is also an environment `{DispWithArrows*}` which suppresses all these numbers.<sup>18</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

---

<sup>16</sup>In this document, the references have been customized with `\labelformat{equation}{(#1)}` in the preamble.

<sup>17</sup>Notice that the environment `{DispWithArrows}` is compatible with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

<sup>18</sup>Even in this case, it's possible to put a "manual tag" with the command `\tag`.

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \\ = a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad \text{we expand}$$

In fact, there is also another option `tagged-lines` which can be used to control the lines that will be tagged. The value of this option is a list of the numbers of the lines that must to be tagged. For example, with the option `tagged-lines = {first,3,last}`, only the first, the third and the last line of the environment will be tagged. There is also the special value `all` which means that all the lines will be tagged.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[tagged-lines = last]
A &= A_1 \Arrow{first stage} \\
&= A_2 \Arrow{second stage} \\
&= A_3
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = A_1 \quad \text{first stage} \\
= A_2 \quad \text{second stage} \\
= A_3 \quad \text{(3)}$$

With the option `fleqn`, the environment is composed flush left (in a way similar to the option `fleqn` of the standard classes of LaTeX). In this case, the left margin can be controlled with the option `mathindent` (with a name inspired by the parameter `\mathindent` of standard LaTeX). The initial value of this parameter is 25 pt.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[fleqn,mathindent = 1cm]
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2 \quad \text{we expand} \quad (4)$$

$$= a^2 + 2a + 1 \quad (5)$$

*Remark:* By design, the option `fleqn` of `witharrows` is independent of the option `fleqn` of LaTeX. Indeed, since the environments of `witharrows` are meant to be used with arrows on the right side, the user may want to use `witharrows` with the option `fleqn` (in order to have more space on the right of the equations for the arrows) while still centering the classical equations.

If the option `leqno` is used as a class option, the labels will be composed on the left also for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.<sup>19</sup>

If the package `amsmath` is loaded, it's possible to use the command `\intertext` in the environments `{DispWithArrows}`. It's also possible to use the environment `{subequations}`. However, there is, for the environments `{DispWithArrows}`, an option `subequations` to encapsulate the environment in an environment `{subequations}`.

In the following example, the key `{subequations}` is fixed by the command `\WithArrowsOptions`. Each environment `{DispWithArrows}` will be subnumerated (in the scope of the `\WithArrowsOptions`)

```
\WithArrowsOptions{subequations}
First environment.
\begin{DispWithArrows}
A &= B \\
&= C
\end{DispWithArrows}
Second environment.
```

---

<sup>19</sup>The package `amsmath` has an option `leqno` but `witharrows`, of course, is not aware of that option: `witharrows` only checks the option `leqno` of the document class.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}
D & = E \\
& = F
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

First environment.

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B \\ &= C \end{aligned} \quad (6a) \quad (6b)$$

Second environment.

$$\begin{aligned} D &= E \\ &= F \end{aligned} \quad (7a) \quad (7b)$$

If there is not enough space to put the tag at the end of a line, there is no automatic positioning of the label on the next line (as in the environments of `amsmath`). However, in `{DispWithArrows}`, the user can use the command `\tagnextline` to manually require the composition of the tag on the following line.

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}[displaystyle]
S_{2(p+1)} \\
&=\sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 \\
&\quad +(-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2+(-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2 \tag{8} \\
&=\smash[b]{\sum_{k=1}^{2p}(-1)^k k^2+(-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2+(-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2} \\
&=p(2p+1)-(2p+1)^2+(2p+2)^2 \\
&= 2p^2+5p+3
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$\left| \begin{aligned} S_{2(p+1)} &= \sum_{k=1}^{2(p+1)} (-1)^k k^2 & (8) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^{2p} (-1)^k k^2 + (-1)^{2p+1}(2p+1)^2 + (-1)^{2p+2}(2p+2)^2 & (9) \\ &= S_{2p} - (2p+1)^2 + (2p+2)^2 & (10) \\ &= 2p^2 + p - 4p^2 - 4p - 1 + 4p^2 + 8p + 4 & (11) \\ &= 2p^2 + 5p + 3 & (12) \end{aligned} \right.$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` provide an option `wrap-lines`. With this option, the lines of the label are automatically wrapped on the right.<sup>2</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows*}[displaystyle,wrap-lines]
S_n \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
&\quad \text{\Arrow{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio } } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{2n}} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
&\quad \text{\Arrow{This line has been wrapped automatically.}} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - e^{-i \frac{n\pi}{2}}}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows*}
```

$$\begin{aligned}
S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{aligned}
\quad \begin{array}{l} \text{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}} \\ \text{This line has been wrapped automatically.} \end{array}$$

The option `wrap-lines` doesn't apply to the environments `{WithArrows}` nested in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, it applies to the instructions `\Arrow` and `\MultiArrow` of the `code-after` of the environments `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`.

We have said that the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` should be used in horizontal mode and not in vertical mode. However, there is an exception. These environments can be used directly after a `\item` of a LaTeX list. In this case, no vertical space is added before the environment.<sup>20</sup>

Here is an example. The use of `{DispWithArrows}` gives the ability to tag an equation (and also to use `wrap-lines`).

```

\begin{enumerate}
\item
\begin{DispWithArrows}%
[displaystyle, wrap-lines, tagged-lines = last, fleqn, mathindent = 0 pt]
S_n
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
\Arrow{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio $e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}}$}\\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
\Arrow{$\left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i$} \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{DispWithArrows}
\end{enumerate}

```

$$\begin{aligned}
1. S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^k \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{n} \Re \left( \frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}} \right)
\end{aligned}
\quad \begin{array}{l} \text{we use the formula for a sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}} \\ \left( e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}} \right)^n = e^{i \frac{n\pi}{2}} = i \end{array} \tag{13}$$

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` is similar to the environment `{align}` of `amsmath`. However, `{DispWithArrows}` is not constructed upon `{align}` (in fact, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath`).

There are differences between `{DispWithArrows}` and `{align}`.

- The environment `{DispWithArrows}` cannot be inserted in an environment `{gather}` of `amsmath`.

---

<sup>20</sup>It's possible to disable this feature with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`.

- An environment `{DispWithArrows}` is always unbreakable (even with `\allowdisplaybreaks` of `amsmath`).
- The commands `\label`, `\tag`, `\notag` and `\nonumber` are allowed only in the last column.
- After an `\item` of a LaTeX list, no vertical space is added (this can be changed with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`).
- **Last but not least, by default, the elements of a `\{DispWithArrows\}` are composed in `textstyle` and not in `displaystyle` (it's possible to change this point with the option `displaystyle`).**

Concerning the references, the package `witharrows` is compatible with the extensions `autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `listlbls`, `prettyref`, `refcheck`, `refstyle`, `showlabels`, `smartref`, `typedref` and `variorref`, and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualtags` of `mathtools`.<sup>21</sup>  
It is not compatible with `showkeys` (not all the labels are shown).

## 8.1 The option `<...>` of `DispWithArrows`

The environment `{DispWithArrows}` provides an option `left-brace`. When present, the value of this option is composed on the left, followed by a curly brace (hence the name) and the body of the environment.<sup>22</sup>

For lisibility, this option `left-brace` is also available with a special syntax: it's possible to give this option between angle brackets (`<` and `>`) just after `{DispWithArrows}` (before the optional arguments between square brackets).

The following code is an example of multi-case equations.<sup>23</sup>

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \binom{n}{p} = >[format = ll,fleqn,displaystyle]
0 & \quad \text{if } p > n
\Arrow{if fact, it's a special case} of the following one \\
\frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \quad \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\
0 & \quad \text{if } p < 0
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

$$\binom{n}{p} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } p > n \\ \frac{n(n-1)\cdots(n-p+1)}{p!} & \text{if } 0 \leq p \leq n \\ 0 & \text{if } p < 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{if fact, it's a special case} \\ \text{of the following one} \end{array} \quad (14)$$

(15)

(16)

In the following example, we subnumerate the equations with the option `subequations` (available when the package `amsmath` is loaded).

```
\begin{DispWithArrows}< \label{system} \ref*{system} \Leftrightarrow >[
    format = l, subequations ]
x+y+z = -3 \Arrow[tikz=-,jump=2]{3 equations} \\
xy+xz+yz=-2 \\
xyz = -15 \label{last-equation}
\end{DispWithArrows}
```

---

<sup>21</sup>We recall that `variorref`, `hyperref`, `cleveref` and `autonum` must be loaded in this order. The package `witharrows` can be loaded anywhere.

<sup>22</sup>The option `left-brace` can also be used without value: in this case, only the brace is drawn...

<sup>23</sup>The environment `{cases}` of `amsmath` is a way to compose such multi-cases equations. However, it's not possible to use the automatic numbering of equations with this environment. The environment `{numcases}` of the extension `cases` (written by Donald Arseneau) provides this possibility but, of course, it's not possible to draw arrows with this extension.

$$(17) \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} x + y + z = -3 \\ xy + xz + yz = -2 \\ xyz = -15 \end{cases} \quad (17a)$$

(17b)

(17c)

The whole system is the equation (17) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{system}`) whereas the last equation is the equation (17c) (this reference has been coded by `\ref{last-equation}`). The command `\ref*` used in the code above is provided by `hyperref`. It's a variant of `\ref` which doesn't create interactive link.

With the option `replace-left-brace-by`, it's possible to replace the left curly brace by another extensible delimiter. For example, “`replace-left-brace-by = [\enskip]`” will compose with a bracket and add also a `\enskip` after this bracket.

## 9 Advanced features

### 9.1 Utilisation with plain-TeX

The extension `witharrows` can be used with plain-TeX. In this case, the extension must be loaded with `\input`:

```
\input{witharrows}
```

In plain-TeX, there is not environments as in LaTeX. Instead of using the environment `{Witharrows}`, with `\begin{WithArrows}` and `\end{WithArrows}`, one should use a pseudo-environment delimited by `\WithArrows` and `\endWithArrows` (idem for `{DispWithArrows}`).

```
$\WithArrows
A & = (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
& = a^2 + 2a + 1
\endWithArrows$
```

The version of `witharrows` for plain-TeX doesn't provide all the functionnalities of the LaTeX version. In particular, the functionnalities which deal with the number of the equations are not available (since they rely upon the system of tags of LaTeX).

### 9.2 The option `tikz-code` : how to change the shape of the arrows

The option `tikz-code`<sup>24</sup> allows the user to change the shape of the arrows.<sup>25</sup>

For example, the options “`up`” and “`down`” described previously (cf. p. 9) are programmed internally with `tikz-code`.

The value of this option must be a valid Tikz drawing instruction (with the final semicolon) with three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` for the start point, the end point and the label of the arrow.

By default, the value is the following:

```
\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2) ;
```

In the following example, we replace this default path by a path with three segments (and the node overwriting the second segment).

---

<sup>24</sup>For historical reasons, the option `tikz-code` has an alias: `TikzCode`.

<sup>25</sup>If the option `wrap-lines` is used in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`, the option `tikz-code` will have no effect for the arrows of this environment but only for the arrows in the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[format=c, ygap=5pt, interline=4mm,
tikz-code = {\draw [rounded corners]
 (#1) -- ([xshift=5mm]#1)
 -- node[circle,
 draw,
 auto = false,
 fill = gray!50,
 inner sep = 1pt] {\tiny #3}
 ([xshift=5mm]#2)
 -- (#2) ; }]
3 (2x+4) = 6 \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
2x+4 = 2 \Arrow{$-4$} \\
2x = -2 \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
x = -1
\end{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{array}{l}
 3(2x + 4) = 6 \\
 2x + 4 = 2 \\
 2x = -2 \\
 x = -1
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \leftarrow \\
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 3$} \\
 \leftarrow \\
 \text{\scriptsize $-4$} \\
 \leftarrow \\
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 2$}
 \end{array}$$

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and its starred version `{DispWithArrows*}` provide a command `\WithArrowsRightX` which can be used in a definition of `tikz-code`. This command gives the  $x$ -value of the right side of the composition box (taking into account the eventual tags of the equations). For an example of use, see p. 27.

### 9.3 The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`

The extension `witharrows` provides a command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` to define styles in a way similar to the “styles” of Tikz.

The command `\WithArrowsNewStyle` takes two mandatory arguments. The first is the name of the style and the second is a list of key-value pairs. The scope of the definition done by `\WithArrowsNewStyle` is the current TeX scope.

The style can be used as a key at the document level (with `\WithArrowsOptions`) or at the environment level (in the optional arguments of `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`). The style can also be used in another command `\WithArrowsNewStyle`.

For an example of use, see p. 27.

### 9.4 Vertical positioning of the arrows

There are four parameters for fine tuning of the vertical positioning of the arrows : `ygap`, `ystart`, `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

We first explain the behaviour when the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to zero:

- the option `ystart` sets the vertical distance between the base line of the text and the start of the arrow (initial value: 0.4 ex);
- the option `ygap` sets the vertical distance between two consecutive arrows (initial value: 0.4 ex).

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\cos x + \sin x)^2 &= \cos^2 x + 2 \cos x \sin x + \sin^2 x \\
 &= \cos^2 x + \sin^2 x + 2 \sin x \cos x \\
 &= 1 + \sin(2x)
 \end{aligned}$$

However, for aesthetic reasons, when it's possible, `witharrows` starts the arrow a bit higher (by an amount `start-adjust`) and ends the arrow a bit lower (by an amount `end-adjust`). By default, both parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are equal to 0.4 ex.

Here is for example the behaviour without the mechanism of `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` (this was the standard behaviour for versions prior to 1.13).

```
$\begin{WithArrows} [start-adjust=0pt, end-adjust=0pt]
A &= (a+1)^2 \Arrow{we expand} \\
&= a^2 + 2a + 1
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$A = (a + 1)^2
 \downarrow \text{we expand}
 = a^2 + 2a + 1$$

Here is the standard behaviour since version 1.13 (the parameters `start-adjust` and `end-adjust` are used with the initial value 0.4 ex). The arrow is longer and the result is more aesthetic.

$$A = (a + 1)^2
 \downarrow \text{we expand}
 = a^2 + 2a + 1$$

It's also possible to use the option `adjust` which sets both `start-adjust` and `end-adjust`.

Since the version 2.1 of `witharrows`, an arrow of `jump` equal to 1 has a maximal length<sup>26</sup> equal to the parameter `max-length-of-arrow`. The initial value of this parameter is 2 cm.

In the following example, the value of `max-length-of-arrow` has been fixed to 1.5 cm.

```
\[\begin{WithArrows} [max-length-of-arrow = 1.5cm]
A
&=
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\
1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\
1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\
1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4
\end{vmatrix}
\Arrow{
\$L_2 \gets L_2-L_1 \\
\$L_3 \gets L_3-L_1 \\
\$L_4 \gets L_4-L_1 \\
\$L_5 \gets L_5-L_1 \% don't put \\ here
} \\
&=
\begin{vmatrix}
1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\
0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\
0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\
0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\
0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4
\end{vmatrix}
\end{WithArrows}\]
```

---

<sup>26</sup>We call *length* of an arrow the difference between the *y*-value of its start point and the *y* value of its end point.

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 1 & b & b^2 & b^3 & b^4 \\ 1 & c & c^2 & c^3 & c^4 \\ 1 & d & d^2 & d^3 & d^4 \\ 1 & e & e^2 & e^3 & e^4 \end{vmatrix} \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} 1 & a & a^2 & a^3 & a^4 \\ 0 & b-a & b^2-a^2 & b^3-a^3 & b^4-a^4 \\ 0 & c-a & c^2-a^2 & c^3-a^3 & c^4-a^4 \\ 0 & d-a & d^2-a^2 & d^3-a^3 & d^4-a^4 \\ 0 & e-a & e^2-a^2 & e^3-a^3 & e^4-a^4 \end{vmatrix} \quad \begin{array}{l} L_2 \leftarrow L_2 - L_1 \\ L_3 \leftarrow L_3 - L_1 \\ L_4 \leftarrow L_4 - L_1 \\ L_5 \leftarrow L_5 - L_1 \end{array}
\end{aligned}$$

## 9.5 Footnotes in the environments of witharrows

If you want to put footnotes in an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, you can use a pair `\footnotemark`–`\footnotetext`.

It's also possible to extract the footnotes with the help of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnote` (with `\usepackage[footnote]{witharrows}` or with `\PassOptionsToPackage`), the package `footnote` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract the footnotes.

If `witharrows` is loaded with the option `footnotehyper`, the package `footnotehyper` is loaded (if it is not yet loaded) and it is used to extract footnotes.

Caution: The packages `footnote` and `footnotehyper` are incompatible. The package `footnotehyper` is the successor of the package `footnote` and should be used preferably. The package `footnote` has some drawbacks, in particular: it must be loaded after the package `xcolor` and it is not perfectly compatible with `hyperref`.

In this document, the package `witharrows` has been loaded with the option `footnotehyper` and we give an example with a footnote in the label of an arrow:

$$\begin{aligned}
A &= (a+b)^2 \\
&= a^2 + b^2 + 2ab \quad \text{We expand}\text{\footnote{27}}
\end{aligned}$$

## 9.6 Option no-arrows

The option `no-arrows` is a convenience given to the user. With this option the arrows are not drawn. However, an analyse of the arrows is done and some errors can be raised, for example if an arrow would arrive after the last row of the environment.

## 9.7 Note for developpers

If you want to construct an environment upon an environment of `witharrows`, we recommand to call the environment with the construction `\WithArrows-\endWithArrows` or `\DispWithArrows-\endDispWithArrows` (and not `\begin{WithArrows}-\end{WithArrows}`, etc.).

By doing so, the error messages generated by `witharrows` will (usually) mention the name of your environment and they will be easier to understand by the final user.

By example, you can define an environment `{DWA}` which is an alias of `{DispWithArrows}`:  
`\NewDocumentEnvironment {DWA} {} {\DispWithArrows}{\endDispWithArrows}`

If you use this environment `{DWA}` in math mode, you will have the following error message:  
The environment `{DWA}` should be used only outside math mode.

---

<sup>27</sup>A footnote.

Another example is the definition of the environment `{DispWithArrows*}` internally in the package `witharrows` by the following code:

```
\NewDocumentEnvironment {DispWithArrows*} {}
  {\WithArrowsOptions{notag}%
   \DispWithArrows}
  {\endDispWithArrows}
```

## 10 Examples

### 10.1 \MoveEqLeft

It's possible to use `\MoveEqLeft` of `mathtools`. Don't forget that `\MoveEqLeft` has also the value of an ampersand (`&`). That's important for the placement of an eventual command `\Arrow`.

```
$\begin{WithArrows}[interline=0.5ex]
\MoveEqLeft \arccos(x) = \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{13}{5}
\Arrow{because both are in $[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}]$} \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \sin(\arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{13}{5}) \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} \\
\Arrow{$\forall x \in [-1, 1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$} \\
& \Leftrightarrow x = \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{5}{13})^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{4}{5})^2}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

$$\begin{aligned} \arccos(x) &= \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{13}{5} \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \sin \left( \arcsin \frac{4}{5} + \arcsin \frac{13}{5} \right) && \text{because both are in } [-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}] \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \cos \arcsin \frac{5}{13} + \frac{5}{13} \cos \arcsin \frac{4}{5} \\ \Leftrightarrow x &= \frac{4}{5} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{5}{13})^2} + \frac{5}{13} \sqrt{1 - (\frac{4}{5})^2} && \forall x \in [-1, 1], \cos(\arcsin x) = \sqrt{1 - x^2} \end{aligned}$$

### 10.2 Modifying the shape of the nodes

It's possible to change the shape of the labels, which are Tikz nodes, by modifying the key “`every node`” of Tikz.

```
\begin{WithArrows}%
  [format = c,
   interline = 4mm,
   tikz = {every node/.style = {circle,
                                 draw,
                                 auto = false,
                                 fill = gray!50,
                                 inner sep = 1pt,
                                 font = \tiny}}]
  3 (2x+4) = 6 \Arrow{$\div 3$} \\
  2x+4 = 2 \Arrow{$-4$} \\
  2x = -2 \Arrow{$\div 2$} \\
  2x = -1
\end{WithArrows}
```

$$\begin{array}{l}
 3(2x + 4) = 6 \\
 2x + 4 = 2 \\
 2x = -2 \\
 2x = -1
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 3$} \\
 \downarrow \\
 \text{\scriptsize $-4$} \\
 \downarrow \\
 \text{\scriptsize $\div 2$}
 \end{array}$$

### 10.3 Examples with the option tikz-code

We recall that the option `tikz-code` is the Tikz code used by `witharrows` to draw the arrows.<sup>28</sup>

The value by default of `tikz-code` is `\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2)` ; where the three markers `#1`, `#2` and `#3` represent the start row, the end row and the label of the arrow.

#### 10.3.1 Example 1

In the following example, we define the value of `tikz-code` with two instructions `\path` : the first instruction draws the arrow itself and the second puts the label in a Tikz node in the rectangle delimited by the arrow.

```

\begin{DispWithArrows*}%
  [displaystyle,
   ygap = 2mm,
   ystart = 0mm,
   tikz-code = {\draw (#1) -- ++(4.5cm,0) |- (#2) ;
                 \path (#1) -- (#2)
                           node[text width = 4.2cm, right, midway] {#3} ;}]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right)
.....
```

$$\begin{aligned}
 S_n &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) && \cos x = \Re(e^{ix}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) && \Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z') \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i\frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) && \exp \text{ is a morphism for } \times \text{ et } + \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) && \text{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio } e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i\frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

---

<sup>28</sup>If an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}` is used with the option `wrap-lines`, the value of the option `tikz-code` is not used for this environment (but is used for the environments nested inside).

### 10.3.2 Example 2

It's possible to modify the previous example to have the “`text width`” automatically computed with the right margin (in a way similar as the `wrap-lines` option) in the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. In the definition of `tikz-code`, we use the command `\WithArrowsRightX` which is the  $x$ -value of the right margin of the current composition box (it's a TeX command and not a dimension). For lisibility, we use a style. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```
\WithArrowsNewStyle{MyStyle}
{displaystyle,
ygap = 2mm,
xoffset = Opt,
ystart = 0mm,
tikz-code = {\path let \p1 = (##1)
in (##1)
-- node [anchor = west,
text width = {\WithArrowsRightX - \x1 - 0.5 em}]
{##3}
(##2) ;
\draw let \p1 = (##1)
in (##1) -- ++(\WithArrowsRightX - \x1,0) |- (##2) ; }}

begin{DispWithArrows}[MyStyle]
S_n
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \\
& = \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right)
.....
```

$$S_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} \cdot \frac{k}{n}\right) \quad \boxed{\cos x = \Re(e^{ix})} \quad (18)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \Re\left(e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad \boxed{\Re(z + z') = \Re(z) + \Re(z')} \quad (19)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} e^{i \frac{k\pi}{2n}}\right) \quad \boxed{\text{exp is a morphism for } \times \text{ et } +} \quad (20)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^k\right) \quad \boxed{\text{sum of terms of a geometric progression of ratio } e^{i \frac{2\pi}{n}}} \quad (21)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - \left(e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}\right)^n}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad \boxed{} \quad (22)$$

$$= \frac{1}{n} \Re\left(\frac{1 - i}{1 - e^{i \frac{\pi}{2n}}}\right) \quad \boxed{} \quad (23)$$

### 10.3.3 Example 3

In the following example, we change the shape of the arrow depending on whether the start row is longer than the end row or not. This example requires the Tikz library `calc`.

```
\begin{WithArrows}[ll, interline=5mm, xoffset=5mm,
tikz-code = {\draw[rounded corners,
every node/.style = {circle,
draw,
auto = false,
```

```

inner sep = 1pt,
fill = gray!50,
font = \tiny }]

let \p1 = (#1),
    \p2 = (#2)
in \ifdim \x1 > \x2
    (\p1) -- node {#3} (\x1,\y2) -- (\p2)
\else
    (\p1) -- (\x2,\y1) -- node {#3} (\p2)
\fi ;}

E & \Longleftarrow \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7
\Arrow{$\times 15$} \\
& \Longleftarrow 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 \\
& \Longleftarrow 5x+20 + 15x+9 = 105 \\
& \Longleftarrow 20x+29 = 105
\Arrow{$-29$} \\
& \Longleftarrow 20x = 76
\Arrow{$\div 20$} \\
& \Longleftarrow x = \frac{38}{10}
\end{WithArrows}

```

$$\begin{aligned}
E &\iff \frac{(x+4)}{3} + \frac{5x+3}{5} = 7 && \text{---} \\
&\iff 5(x+4) + 3(5x+3) = 105 && \downarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff 5x + 20 + 15x + 9 = 105 \\
&\iff 20x + 29 = 105 && \downarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff 20x = 76 && \leftarrow \text{---} \\
&\iff x = \frac{38}{10} && \leftarrow \text{---}
\end{aligned}$$

## 10.4 Automatic numbered loop

Assume we want to draw a loop of numbered arrows. In this purpose, it's possible to write a dedicated command `\NumberedLoop` which will do the job when used in `code-after`. In the following example, we write this command with `\NewDocumentCommand` of `xparse` and `\foreach` of `pgffor` (both packages are loaded when `witharrows` is loaded).

```

\NewDocumentCommand \NumberedLoop {}
{\foreach \j in {2,...,\WithArrowsNbLines}
 { \pgfmathtruncatemacro{\i}{\j-1}
   \Arrow[rr]{\i}{\j}{\i} }
 \Arrow[rr,xoffset=1cm,tikz=-]{1}{\WithArrowsNbLines}{\WithArrowsNbLines}}

```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is a command available in `code-after` which gives the total number of lines (=rows) of the current environment (it's a command and not a counter).

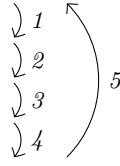
```

\$ \begin{WithArrows} [code-after = \NumberedLoop]
a.\;& f \text{ est continuous on } E \\
b.\;& f \text{ est continuous in } O \\
c.\;& f \text{ is bounded on the unit sphere} \\
d.\;& \exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad |f(x)| \leq K |x| \\

```

```
e.\; f \text{ is lipschitzian}
\end{WithArrows}$
```

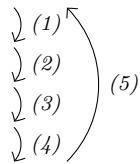
- a.  $f$  est continuous on  $E$
- b.  $f$  est continuous in 0
- c.  $f$  is bounded on the unit sphere
- d.  $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K\|x\|$
- e.  $f$  is lipschitzian



As usual, it's possible to change the characteristic of both arrows and nodes with the option `tikz`. However, if we want to change the style to have, for example, numbers in round brackets, the best way is to change the value of `tikz-code`:

```
tikz-code = {\draw (#1) to node {\footnotesize (#3)} (#2) ;}
```

- a.  $f$  est continuous on  $E$
- b.  $f$  est continuous in 0
- c.  $f$  is bounded on the unit sphere
- d.  $\exists K > 0 \quad \forall x \in E \quad \|f(x)\| \leq K\|x\|$
- e.  $f$  is lipschitzian



## 11 Implementation

### 11.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded

First, `tikz` and some Tikz libraries are loaded before the `\ProvidesExplPackage`. They are loaded this way because `\usetikzlibrary` in `expl3` code fails.<sup>29</sup>

```
<@@=witharrows>
```

```

1  {*LaTeX}
2  \RequirePackage{tikz}
3  \RequirePackage{expl3}[2019/07/01]
4  
```

```
5  {*plain-TeX}
```

```
6  \input tikz.tex
```

```
7  \input expl3-generic.tex
```

```
8  
```

```
9  \usetikzlibrary{arrows.meta,bending}
```

Then, we can give the traditional declaration of a package written with `expl3`:

```

10 {*LaTeX}
11 \RequirePackage{l3keys2e}
12 \ProvidesExplPackage
13   {witharrows}
14   {\myfiledate}
15   {\myfileversion}
16   {Draws arrows for explanations on the right}

```

---

<sup>29</sup>cf. [tex.stackexchange.com/questions/57424/using-of-usetikzlibrary-in-an-expl3-package-fails](https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/57424/using-of-usetikzlibrary-in-an-expl3-package-fails)

The package `xparse` will be used to define the environments `{WithArrows}`, `{DispWithArrows}`, `{DispWithArrows*}` and the commands `\Arrow`, `\WithArrowsOptions` and `\WithArrowsNewStyle`.

```

17 \RequirePackage { xparse } [ 2019-01-01 ]
18 </LaTeX>
19 (*plain-TeX)
20 \ExplSyntaxOn
21 \catcode `@ = 11
22 </plain-TeX>
```

## 11.2 The packages `footnote` and `footnotehyper`

A few options can be given to the package `witharrows` when it is loaded (with `\usepackage`, `\RequirePackage` or `\PassOptionsToPackage`). Currently (version 2.2), there are two such options: `footnote` and `footnotehyper`. With the option `footnote`, `witharrows` loads `footnote` and uses it to extract the footnotes from the environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for the option `footnotehyper`.

The boolean `\g_@@_footnotehyper_bool` will indicate if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```

23 (*LaTeX)
24 \bool_new:N \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool
```

The boolean `\g_@@_footnote_bool` will indicate if the option `footnote` is used, but quickly, it will also be set to true if the option `footnotehyper` is used.

```

25 \bool_new:N \g_@@_footnote_bool
26 </LaTeX>
```

```

27 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nn { \msg_new:nnn { witharrows } }
28 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_new:nnn { \msg_new:nnnn { witharrows } }
29 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn
30   { \msg_redirect_name:nn { witharrows } }
31 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:n { \msg_error:nn { witharrows } }
32 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_warning:n { \msg_warning:nn { witharrows } }
33 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fatal:n { \msg_fatal:nn { witharrows } }
34 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_error:nn { \msg_error:nnn { witharrows } }
35 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_error:nn { n x }
```

We define a set of keys `WithArrows/package` for these options.

```

36 (*LaTeX)
37 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / package }
38 {
39   footnote .bool_gset:N = \g_@@_footnote_bool ,
40   footnotehyper .bool_gset:N = \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool ,
41   unknown .code:n =
42     @@@_fatal:n { Option-unknown-for-package }
43 }
44 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-unknown-for-package }
45 {
46   You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~when~loading~the~
47   package~witharrows.~Try~to~use~the~command~
48   \token_to_str:N\WithArrowsOptions.
49 }
```

We process the options when the package is loaded (with `\usepackage`).

```

50 \ProcessKeysOptions { WithArrows / package }

51 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-incompatible-with-Beamer }
52 {
53   The~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~incompatible~
54   with~Beamer~because~Beamer~has~its~own~system~to~extract~footnotes.
55 }
```

```

56 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package }
57 {
58   You~can't~use~the~option~'footnote'~because~the~package~
59   footnotehyper~has~already~been~loaded.~
60   If~you~want,~you~can~use~the~option~'footnotehyper'~and~the~footnotes~
61   within~the~environments~of~witharrows~will~be~extracted~with~the~tools~
62   of~the~package~footnotehyper.\\
63   If~you~go~on,~the~package~footnote~won't~be~loaded.
64 }

65 \@@_msg_new:nn { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package }
66 {
67   You~can't~use~the~option~'footnotehyper'~because~the~package~
68   footnote~has~already~been~loaded.~
69   If~you~want,~you~can~use~the~option~'footnote'~and~the~footnotes~
70   within~the~environments~of~witharrows~will~be~extracted~with~the~tools~
71   of~the~package~footnote.\\
72   If~you~go~on,~the~package~footnotehyper~won't~be~loaded.
73 }

74 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool
75 {
76   \@ifclassloaded { beamer }
77   { \msg_info:nn { witharrows } { Option-incompatible-with-Beamer } }
78   {
79     \@ifpackageloaded { footnotehyper }
80     { \@@_error:n { footnote-with-footnotehyper-package } }
81     { \usepackage { footnote } }
82   }
83 }

84 \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnotehyper_bool
85 {
86   \@ifclassloaded { beamer }
87   { \@@_info:n { Option-incompatible-with-Beamer } }
88   {
89     \@ifpackageloaded { footnote }
90     { \@@_error:n { footnotehyper-with-footnote-package } }
91     { \usepackage { footnotehyper } }
92   }
93   \bool_gset_true:N \g_@@_footnote_bool
94 }

```

The flag `\g_@@_footnote_bool` is raised and so, we will only have to test `\g_@@_footnote_bool` in order to know if we have to insert an environment `{savenotes}` (the `\begin{savenotes}` is in `\@@_pre_halign:n` and `\end{savenotes}` at the end of the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`).

### 11.3 The class option leqno

The boolean `\c_@@_leqno_bool` will indicate if the class option `leqno` is used. When this option is used in LaTeX, the command `\eqnnum` is redefined (as one can see in the file `leqno.clo`). That's enough to put the labels on the left in our environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`. However, that's not enough when our option `wrap-lines` is used. That's why we have to know if this option is used as a class option. With the following programmation, `leqno` *can't* be given as an option of `witharrows` (by design).

```

95 \bool_new:N \c_@@_leqno_bool
96 \DeclareOption { leqno } { \bool_set_true:N \c_@@_leqno_bool }
97 \DeclareOption* { }
98 \ProcessOptions*
99 
```

## 11.4 Some technical definitions

```

100 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \tl_put_right:Nn { N v }
101 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \seq_set_split:Nnn { N x x }

```

We create booleans in order to know if some packages are loaded. For example, for the package `amsmath`, the boolean is called `\c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool`.<sup>30</sup>

```

102 \AtBeginDocument
103 {
104     \clist_map_inline:nn
105     {
106         amsmath, amsthm, autonum, cleveref, hyperref, mathtools, showlabels,
107         typedref, unicode-math, varwidth
108     }
109     {
110         \bool_new:c { c_@@_#1_loaded_bool }
111     } *LaTeX
112     \@ifpackageloaded { #1 }
113     { \bool_set_true:c { c_@@_#1_loaded_bool } }
114     { }
115 } /LaTeX
116 {*plain-TeX}
117     \bool_set_false:c { c_@@_#1_loaded_bool }
118 } /plain-TeX
119     }
120 }

```

We define a command `\@@_strcmp:nn` to compare two token lists. It will be available whether the engine is pdfTeX, XeTeX or LuaTeX.

```

121 \sys_if_engine_luatex:TF
122 {
123     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_strcmp:nn #1 #2
124     { \lua_now:e { 13kernel.strcmp('#1','#2') } }
125 }
126 {
127     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_strcmp:nn #1 #2
128     { \tex_strcmp:D { #1 } { #2 } }
129 }

```

We can now define a command `\@@_sort_seq:N` which will sort a sequence.

```

130 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_sort_seq:N #1
131 {
132     \seq_sort:Nn #1
133     {
134         \int_compare:nNnTF
135         {
136             \@@_strcmp:nn
137             { \str_lower_case:n { ##1 } }
138             { \str_lower_case:n { ##2 } }
139         }
140         > 0
141         \sort_return_swapped:
142         \sort_return_same:
143     }
144 }

```

The following command converts each item of a sequence from `tl` to `str`. It will be used when creating list of keys (a key name is always a `str`).

```

145 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_convert_to_str_seq:N #1

```

---

<sup>30</sup>It's not possible to use `\ifpackageloaded` in the core of the functions because `\ifpackageloaded` is available only in the preamble.

```

146  {
147    \seq_clear:N \l_tmpa_seq
148    \seq_map_inline:Nn #1
149    {
150      \seq_put_left:Nx \l_tmpa_seq { \tl_to_str:n { ##1 } }
151    }
152    \seq_set_eq:NN #1 \l_tmpa_seq
153  }
154 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn #1 #2
155  {
156    \seq_set_from_clist:Nn #1 { #2 }
157    \@@_convert_to_str_seq:N #1
158  }

```

The command `\@@_save:N` saves a `expl3` variable by creating a global version of the variable. For a variable named `\l_name_type`, the corresponding global variable will be named `\g_name_type`. The type of the variable is determined by the suffix `type` and is used to apply the corresponding `expl3` commands.

```

159 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_save:N #1
160  {
161    \seq_set_split:Nxx \l_tmpa_seq
162    { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
163    { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
164    \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl

```

The string `\l_tmpa_str` will contains the *type* of the variable.

```

165  \str_set:Nx \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
166  \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_if_exist:cF }
167  { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
168  {
169    \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_new:c }
170    { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
171  }
172  \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_gset_eq:cN }
173  { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ } #1
174 }

```

The command `\@@_restore:N` affects to the `expl3` variable the value of the (previously) set value of the corresponding *global* variable.

```

175 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_restore:N #1
176  {
177    \seq_set_split:Nxx \l_tmpa_seq
178    { \char_generate:nn { `_ } { 12 } }
179    { \cs_to_str:N #1 }
180    \seq_pop_left:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_tl
181    \str_set:Nx \l_tmpa_str { \seq_item:Nn \l_tmpa_seq { -1 } }
182    \use:c { \l_tmpa_str_set_eq:Nc }
183    #1 { g _\seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq _ _ _ }
184 }

```

We define a Tikz style `@@_node_style` for the `l`-nodes and `r`-nodes that will be created in the `\halign`. These nodes are Tikz nodes of shape “rectangle” but with zero width. An arrow between two nodes starts from the *south* anchor of the first node and arrives at the *north* anchor of the second node.

```

185 \tikzset
186  {
187    @@_node_style / .style =
188    {
189      above = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
190      inner sep = \c_zero_dim ,
191      minimum width = \c_zero_dim ,
192      minimum height = \l_@@_ygap_dim
193    }
194 }

```

If the user uses the option `show-nodes` (it's a !3keys option), the Tikz options `draw` and `red` will be appended to this style. This feature may be useful for debugging.<sup>31</sup>

The style `@@_standard` is loaded in standard in the `{tikzpicture}` we need. The names of the nodes are prefixed by `wa` (by security) but also by a prefix which is the position-in-the-tree of the nested environments.

```

195 \tikzset
196 {
197   @@_standard / .style =
198   {
199     remember picture ,
200     overlay ,
201     name-prefix = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str -
202   }
203 }
```

We also define a style for the tips of arrow. The final user of the extension `witharrows` will use this style if he wants to draw an arrow directly with a Tikz command in his document (probably using the Tikz nodes created by `{WithArrows}` in the `\halign`).

```

204 \tikzset
205 {
206   WithArrows / arrow / tips / .style =
207   { > = { Straight-Barb [ scale = 1.2 , bend ] } }
208 }
```

The style `WithArrows/arrow` will be used to draw the arrows (more precisely, it will be passed to `every~path`).

```

209 \tikzset
210 {
211   WithArrows / arrow / .style =
212   {
213     align = left ,
```

We have put the option `align = left` because we want to give the user the possibility of using `\&` in the labels.

```

214     auto = left ,
215 (*LaTeX)
216     font = \small \itshape ,
217 (/LaTeX)
218     WithArrows / arrow / tips ,
219     bend-left = 45 ,
220     ->
221   }
222 }
```

The option `subequations` is an option which uses the environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`. That's why, if `amsmath` is loaded, we add the key `subequations` to the list of the keys available in `\WithArrowsOptions` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

223 (*LaTeX)
224 \AtBeginDocument
225 {
226   \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool
227   {
228     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq { subequations }
229     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq { subequations }
230   }
```

---

<sup>31</sup>The v-nodes, created near the end of line in `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are not shown with the option `show-nodes`.

In order to increase the interline in the environments `{WithArrows}`, `{DispWithArrows}`, etc., we will use the command `\spread@equation` of `amsmath`. When used, this command becomes no-op (in the current TeX group). Therefore, it will be possible to use the environments of `amsmath` (e.g. `{aligned}`) in an environment `{WithArrows}`.

Nevertheless, we want the extension `witharrows` available without `amsmath`. That's why we give a definition of `\spread@equation` if `amsmath` is not loaded (we put the code in a `\AtBeginDocument` because the flag `\c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool` is itself set in a `\AtBeginDocument`).

```

231   {
232   </LaTeX>
233     \cs_new_protected:Npn \spread@equation
234     {
235       \openup \jot
236       \cs_set_eq:NN \spread@equation \prg_do_nothing:
237     }
238   {*LaTeX}
239   }
240 }
241 </LaTeX>

242 \tl_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_tl
243 \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl

```

## 11.5 Variables

The boolean `\l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{WithArrows}` and the boolean `\l_@@_in_dispwitharrows_bool` will be raised in an environment `{DispWithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows*}`. The boolean `\l_@@_in_code_after_bool` will be raised during the execution of the `code-after` (option `code-after`).

```

244 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
245 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
246 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_code_after_bool

```

The following sequence is the position of the last environment `{WithArrows}` in the tree of the nested environments `{WithArrows}`.

```

247 \seq_new:N \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
248 \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq 1

```

The following counter will give the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` of level 0. This counter will be used only in the definition of `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```

249 \int_new:N \g_@@_last_env_int

```

The following integer indicates the position of the box that will be created for an environment `{WithArrows}` (not an environment `{DispWithArrows}`) : 0 (`=t=\vtop`), 1 (`=c=\vcenter`) or 2 (`=b=\vbox`).

```

250 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_env_int

```

The integer `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` indicates the position of the arrow with the following code (the option `v` is accessible only for the arrows in `code-after` where the options `i`, `group` et `groups` are not available).

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow` in `code-after` (see below).

```

251 \int_new:N \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
252 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 3

```

In the `\halign` of an environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`, we will have to use four counters:

- `\g_@@_arrow_int` to count the arrows created in the environment ;
- `\g_@@_line_int` to count the lines of the `\halign` ;
- `\g_@@_col_int` to count the columns of the `\halign`.

These counters will be incremented in a cell of the `\halign` and, therefore, the incrementation must be global. However, we want to be able to include a `{WithArrows}` in another `{WithArrows}`. To do so, we must restore the previous value of these counters at the end of an environment `{WithArrows}` and we decide to manage a stack for each of these counters.

```

253 \seq_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int_seq
254 \int_new:N \g_@@_arrow_int
255 \seq_new:N \g_@@_line_int_seq
256 \int_new:N \g_@@_line_int
257 \seq_new:N \g_@@_col_int_seq
258 \int_new:N \g_@@_col_int

```

We will also use a “static” version of the counter of columns, called `\g_@@_static_col_int`. The value will be set directly in each cell of the array by an instruction in the template of the `\halign`. The aim of this programmation is to try to detect some utilisation of `\omit` (which should be forbidden) in the cells of the `\halign`.

```

259 \seq_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int_seq
260 \int_new:N \g_@@_static_col_int

```

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the comma list `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be the list of the numbers of lines to be tagged (with the counter equation of LaTeX). In fact, `\l_@@_tags_clist` may contain non negative integers but also three special values: `first`, `last` and `all`.

```

261 (*LaTeX)
262 \clist_new:N \l_@@_tags_clist
263 \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }

```

During the execution of an environment `{DispWithArrows}`, if a row must be tagged, the (local) value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` will be put (by convention) to `all`.

```

264 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_test_if_to_tag:
265 {
266   \clist_if_in:NVT \l_@@_tags_clist \g_@@_line_int
267   { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
268 }
269 
```

If the user has given a value for the option `command-name` (at the global or at the *environment* level), a command with this name is defined locally in the environment with meaning `\@@_Arrow`. The initial value of the option `command-name` is “`Arrow`” and thus, by default, the name of the command will be `\Arrow`.

```

270 \str_new:N \l_@@_command_name_str
271 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { Arrow }

```

The string `\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str` is only a string that will be displayed in some error messages. For example, if `command-name` is defined to be `Explanation`, this string will contain “`\Arrow alias \Explanation`”.

```

272 \str_new:N \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
273 \str_set:Nx \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str { \token_to_str:N \Arrow }

```

The sequence `\g_@@_names_seq` will be the list of all the names of environments used (via the option `name`) in the document: two environments must not have the same name. However, it’s possible to use the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

```

274 \seq_new:N \g_@@_names_seq

```

The boolean `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` corresponds to the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`. Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it's possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`). `\l_@@_sbwi_bool` is the boolean corresponding to this option.

```

275 {*LaTeX}
276 \bool_new:N \l_@@_sbwi_bool
277 
```

```

278 {*LaTeX}
279 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
280 \bool_new:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
281 \bool_new:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
282 
```

```

283 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_first_columns_bool
284 \bool_new:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
285 \bool_new:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
286 \bool_new:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
287 \tl_new:N \l_@@_initial_tl
288 \tl_new:N \l_@@_final_tl
289 \int_new:N \l_@@_nb_cols_int

```

The string `\l_@@_format_str` will contain the *format* of the array which is a succession of letters `r`, `c` and `l` specifying the type of the columns of the `\halign` (except the column for the labels of the equations in the environment `{DispWithArrows}`).

```
290 \str_new:N \l_@@_format_str
```

The option `\l_@@_subequations_bool` corresponds to the option `subequations`.

```

291 {*LaTeX}
292 \bool_new:N \l_@@_subequations_bool
293 
```

## 11.6 The definition of the options

There are four levels where options can be set:

- with `\usepackage[...]{witharrows}`: this level will be called *package* level;
- with `\WithArrowsOptions{...}`: this level will be called *global* level<sup>32</sup>;
- with `\begin{WithArrows}{...}`: this level will be called *environment* level;
- with `\Arrow{...}` (included in `code-after`): this level will be called *local* level.

When we scan a list of options, we want to be able to raise an error if two options of position (`ll`, `rl`, `i`, etc.) of the arrows are present. That's why we keep the first option of position in a variable called `\l_@@_previous_key_str`. The following function `\@@_eval_if_allowed:n` will execute its argument only if a first key of position has not been set (and raise an error elsewhere).

```

294 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_eval_if_allowed:n #1
295 {
296     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
297     {
298         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_tl
299         #1
300     }
301     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible~options } }
302 }
```

---

<sup>32</sup>This level is called *global level* but the settings done by `\WithArrowsOptions` are local in the TeX sense: their scope corresponds to the current TeX group.

```

303 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_option:n #1
304   { \@@_eval_if_allowed:n { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 } } }

First a set of keys that will be used at the global or environment level of options.

305 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
306 {
307   max-length-of-arrow .dim_set:N = \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim ,
308   max-length-of-arrow .value_required:n = true ,
309   max-length-of-arrow .initial:n = 2 cm ,
310   ygap .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ygap_dim ,
311   ygap .value_required:n = true ,
312   ygap .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
313   ystart .dim_set:N = \l_@@_ystart_dim ,
314   ystart .value_required:n = true ,
315   ystart .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
316   more-columns .code:n =
317     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Too~much~columns~in~WithArrows } { none } ,
318   more-columns .value_forbidden:n = true,
319   command-name .code:n =
320     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_command_name_str { #1 }
321     \str_set:Nx \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str
322       { \c_backslash_str Arrow-alias~\c_backslash_str #1 } ,
323   command-name .value_required:n = true ,
324   tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl,
325   tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)-to-node{#3}-(#2); ,
326   tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
327   TikzCode .meta:n = { tikz-code = #1 } ,
328   displaystyle .bool_set:N = \l_@@_displaystyle_bool ,
329   displaystyle .default:n = true ,
330   show-nodes .code:n =
331     \tikzset { @node_style / .append-style = { draw , red } } ,
332   show-nodes .value_forbidden:n = true,
333   show-node-names .bool_set:N = \l_@@_show_node_names_bool ,
334   show-node-names .default:n = true ,
335   group .code:n =
336     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
337     {
338       \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { group }
339       \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
340       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 7
341     }
342     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
343   group .value_forbidden:n = true ,
344   groups .code:n =
345     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
346     {
347       \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { groups }
348       \seq_if_in:NnF \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group }
349         { \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { new-group } }
350       \seq_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { xoffset }
351       \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 6
352     }
353     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options } } ,
354   groups .value_forbidden:n = true ,
355   tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
356   tikz .initial:n = \c_empty_tl ,
357   tikz .value_required:n = true ,
358   rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
359   rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 3 ,
360   ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
361   ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 1 ,
362   rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
363   rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 2 ,

```

```

364     lr     .value_forbidden:n = true ,
365     lr     .code:n          = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 0 ,
366     i     .value_forbidden:n = true ,
367     i     .code:n          = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 5 ,
368     xoffset .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
369     xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
370     xoffset .initial:n = 3 mm ,
371     jot .dim_set:N = \jot ,
372     jot .value_required:n = true ,
373     interline .skip_set:N = \l_@@_interline_skip ,
374     interline .value_required:n = true ,
375     start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim ,
376     start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
377     start-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
378     end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim ,
379     end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
380     end-adjust .initial:n = 0.4 ex ,
381     adjust .meta:n = { start-adjust = #1 , end-adjust = #1 } ,
382     adjust .value_required:n = true ,

```

With the option `no-arrows`, the arrows won't be drawn. However, the "first pass" of the arrows is done and some errors may be detected. The nullification of `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` is for the standard arrows and the nullification of `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn` is for "Arrow in code-after".

```

383   no-arrows .code:n =
384     \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrows:nn \use_none:nn
385     \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \use_none:nnn ,
386   no-arrows .value_forbidden:n = true ,
387 }

```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{WithArrows}` (and not `{DispWithArrow}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

388 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific }
389 {
390   t     .code:n          = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 0 ,
391   t     .value_forbidden:n = true ,
392   c     .code:n          = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 1 ,
393   c     .value_forbidden:n = true ,
394   b     .code:n          = \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_env_int 2 ,
395   b     .value_forbidden:n = true
396 }

```

The following list of the (left) extensible delimiters of LaTeX is only for the validation of the key `replace-left-brace-by`.

```

397 \clist_new:N \c_@@_extensible_delimiters_clist
398 \clist_set:Nn \c_@@_extensible_delimiters_clist
399 {
400   ., \{, (, [, \lbrace, \lbrack, \lgroup, \langle, \lmoustache, \lceil, \lfloor
401 }
402 (*LaTeX)
403 \AtBeginDocument
404 {
405   \bool_if:nT
406     { \c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool || \use:c { c_@@_unicode-math_loaded_bool } }
407   {
408     \clist_put_right:Nn \c_@@_extensible_delimiters_clist { \lvert, \rvert }
409   }
410 }
411 
```

Now a set of keys specific to the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` (and not `{WithArrows}`). Despite its name, this set of keys will also be used in `\WithArrowsOptions`.

```

412 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific }
413 {
414   fleqn .bool_set:N = \l_@@_fleqn_bool ,
415   fleqn .default:n = true ,
416   mathindent .dim_set:N = \l_@@_mathindent_dim ,
417   mathindent .value_required:n = true ,
418   mathindent .initial:n = 25 pt ,
419 (*LaTeX)
420   notag .code:n =
421     \str_if_eq:nnTF { #1 } { true }
422       { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
423       { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } } ,
424   notag .default:n = true ,
425 subequations .code:n =
426   \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool
427     { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_subequations_bool }
428     {
429       \@@_error:n { amsmath-not-loaded }
430       \group_begin:
431       \globaldefs = 1
432       \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { amsmath-not-loaded } { info }
433       \group_end:
434     } ,
435   subequations .default:n = true ,
436   subequations .value_forbidden:n = true ,
437   nonumber .meta:n = notag ,
438   allow-multiple-labels .code:n =
439     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Multiple-labels } { none } ,
440   allow-multiple-labels .value_forbidden:n = true ,
441   tagged-lines .code:n =
442     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { #1 }
443     \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
444     {
445       \clist_remove_all:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { first }
446       \clist_put_left:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist \c_one_int
447     } ,
448   tagged-lines .value_required:n = true ,
449 (*LaTeX)
450   wrap-lines .bool_set:N = \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool ,
451   wrap-lines .default:n = true ,
452   replace-left-brace-by .code:n =
453   {
454     \tl_set:Nx \l_tmpa_tl { \tl_head:n { #1 } }
455     \clist_if_in:NVTF
456       \c_@@_extensible_delimiters_clist
457       \l_tmpa_tl
458       { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl { #1 } }
459       { \@@_error:n { Bad-value-for-replace-brace-by } }
460   } ,
461   replace-left-brace-by .initial:n = \lbrace ,

```

Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no vertical space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}`. With the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`, it's possible to restore the previous behaviour (which corresponds to the standard behaviour of `{align}` of `amsmath`).

```

462 (*LaTeX)>
463   standard-behaviour-with-items .bool_set:N = \l_@@_sbwi_bool ,
464   standard-behaviour-with-items .default:n = true
465 (*LaTeX)
466 }

```

Now a set of keys which will be used in all the environments (but not in `\WithArrowsOptions`).

```

467 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Env }
468 {
469     name .code:n =
470         \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str { #1 }
471         \seq_if_in:NNTF \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str
472             { \@@_error:n { Duplicate-name } }
473             { \seq_gput_left:NV \g_@@_names_seq \l_tmpa_str }
474         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_name_str \l_tmpa_str ,
475     name .value_required:n = true ,
476     code-before .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_before_tl { #1 } ,
477     code-before .value_required:n = true,
478     CodeBefore .meta:n = { code-before = #1 } ,
479     code-after .code:n = \tl_put_right:Nn \l_@@_code_after_tl { #1 } ,
480     code-after .value_required:n = true ,
481     CodeAfter .meta:n = { code-after = #1 } ,
482     format .code:n =
483         \tl_if_empty:nTF { #1 }
484             { \@@_error:n { Invalid~option~format } }
485             {
486                 \regex_match:nnTF { \A[rcl]*\Z } { #1 }
487                     { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { #1 } }
488                     { \@@_error:n { Invalid~option~format } }
489             } ,
490     format .value_required:n = true ,
491 }
```

Now, we begin the construction of the major sets of keys, named “`WithArrows / WithArrows`”, “`WithArrows / DispWithArrows`” and “`WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions`”. Each of these sets of keys will be completed after.

```

492 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows }
493 {
494     WithArrows .inherit:n =
495     {
496         WithArrows / Global ,
497         WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
498         WithArrows / Env
499     } ,
500     DispWithArrows .inherit:n =
501     {
502         WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific ,
503         WithArrows / Global ,
504         WithArrows / Env ,
505     } ,
506     WithArrowsOptions .inherit:n =
507     {
508         WithArrows / Global ,
509         WithArrows / WithArrowsSpecific ,
510         WithArrows / DispWithArrowsSpecific
511     }
512 }
```

A sequence of `str` for the options available in `{WithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

513 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
514 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
515 {
516     adjust, b, c, code-after, code-before, command-name,
517     displaystyle, end-adjust,
518     format, group, groups, i,
```

```

519     interline, jot, ll,
520     lr, max-length-of-arrow, more-columns, name,
521     no-arrows, rl, rr,
522     show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust,
523     t, tikz, tikz-code,
524     xoffset, ygap, ystart
525   }
526 \@@_convert_to_str_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq

527 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows }
528 {
529   unknown .code:n =
530     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq
531     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrows }
532 }

533 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / DispWithArrows }
534 {
535   left-brace .tl_set:N = \l_@@_left_brace_tl ,
536   unknown .code:n =
537     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
538     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~DispWithArrows }
539 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `{DispWithArrows}`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

540 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
541 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_DispatchWithArrows_seq
542 {
543   code-after, code-before, command-name, tikz-code, adjust,
544   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, format, groups, i, interline, jot,
545   left-brace, ll, lr, max-length-of-arrow, mathindent, name, no-arrows,
546   replace-left-brace-by, rl, rr, show-node-names, show-nodes, start-adjust,
547   tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset, ygap, ystart,
548 (*LaTeX)
549   allow-multiple-labels, tagged-lines, nonumber, notag
550 (/LaTeX)
551 }

552 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions }
553 {
554   allow-duplicate-names .code:n =
555     \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { Duplicate-name } { none } ,
556   allow-duplicate-names .value_forbidden:n = true ,
557   unknown .code:n =
558     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
559     \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
560 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `\WithArrowsOptions`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

561 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
562 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
563 {
564   allow-duplicate-names, b, c, command-name, more-columns, tikz-code, adjust,
565   displaystyle, end-adjust, fleqn, group, groups, i, interline, jot, ll, lr,
566   mathindent, max-length-of-arrow, no-arrows, rl, rr, show-node-names,
567   show-nodes, start-adjust, t, tikz, wrap-lines, xoffset, ygap, ystart,
568 (*LaTeX)
569   allow-multiple-labels, nonumber, notag, standard-behaviour-with-items,
570   tagged-lines
571 (/LaTeX)
572 }

```

The command `\@@_set_independent`: is a command without argument that will be used to specify that the arrow will be “independent” (of the potential groups of the option group or groups). This information will be stored in the field “status” of the arrow. Another value of the field “status” is “new-group”.

```

573 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_independent:
574 {
575     \str_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_previous_key_str
576     {
577         \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_tl
578         \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
579         \str_if_eq:VnF \l_keys_value_tl { NoValue }
580         { \@@_error:n { Value-for-a-key } }
581     }
582     { \@@_error:n { Incompatible-options-in-Arrow } }
583 }
```

The options of an individual arrow are parsed twice. The first pass is when the command `\Arrow` is read. The second pass is when the arrows are drawn (after the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`). Now, we present the keys set for the first pass. The main goal is to extract informations which will be necessary during the scan of the arrows. For instance, we have to know if some arrows are “independent” or use the option “new-group”.

```

584 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
585 {
586     jump .code:n =
587         \int_compare:nTF { #1 > 0 }
588         { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int { #1 } }
589         { \@@_error:n { Negative-jump } } ,
590     jump .value_required:n = true,
591     rr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
592     ll .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
593     rl .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
594     lr .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
595     i .code:n = \@@_set_independent: ,
596     rr .default:n = NoValue ,
597     ll .default:n = NoValue ,
598     rl .default:n = NoValue ,
599     lr .default:n = NoValue ,
600     i .default:n = NoValue ,
601     new-group .value_forbidden:n = true,
602     new-group .code:n =
603         \int_compare:nTF { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 6 }
604             { \str_set:Nn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group } }
605             { \@@_error:n { new-group-without-groups } } ,
```

The other keys don’t give any information necessary during the scan of the arrows. However, you try to detect errors and that’s why all the keys are listed in this keys set. An unknown key will be detected at the point of the command `\Arrow` and not at the end of the environment.

```

606 tikz-code .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
607 tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
608 tikz .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
609 tikz .value_required:n = true ,
610 start-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
611 start-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
612 end-adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
613 end-adjust .value_required:n = true ,
614 adjust .code:n = \prg_do_nothing: ,
615 adjust .value_required:n = true ,
616 xoffset .code:n = ,
617 unknown .code:n =
618     \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
619     \seq_if_in:NVTF \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq \l_keys_key_tl
620     {
```

```

621     \str_set:Nn \l_tmpa_str
622     { ~However,~this~key~can~be~used~in~the~options~of~{WithArrows}. }
623   }
624   { \str_clear:N \l_tmpa_str }
625 \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~in~Arrow }
626 }

```

A sequence of the options available in `\Arrow`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```

627 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
628 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq
629 {
630   adjust, end-adjust, i, jump, ll, lr, rl, rr, start-adjust, tikz, tikz-code,
631   xoffset
632 }
633 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n #1
634 {
635   \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
636   {
637     \str_set_eq:NN \l_@@_previous_key_str \l_keys_key_tl
638     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int { #1 }
639   }
640 }

```

The options of the individual commands `\Arrows` are scanned twice. The second pass is just before the drawing of the arrow. In this set of keys, we don't put an item for the unknown keys because an unknown key would have been already detected during the first pass.

```

641 \keys_define:nn {WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass}
642 {
643   tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
644   tikz-code .initial:n = \draw-(#1)~to~node{#3}~-(#2)~; ,
645   tikz .code:n = \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
646   tikz .initial:n = \c_empty_tl ,
647   rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 3 ,
648   ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 1 ,
649   rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 2 ,
650   lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 0 ,
651   i .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_arrow:n 5 ,

```

The option `xoffset` is not allowed when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used except, if the arrow is independent or if there is only one arrow.

```

652 xoffset .code:n =
653   \bool_if:nTF
654   {
655     \int_compare_p:nNn \g_@@_arrow_int > 1
656     &&
657     \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int > 5
658     &&
659     ! \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent }
660   }
661   { \@@_error:n { Option-xoffset-forbidden } }
662   { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_xoffset_dim { #1 } } ,
663   xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
664   start-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_start_adjust_dim,
665   end-adjust .dim_set:N = \l_@@_end_adjust_dim,
666   adjust .code:n =
667     \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_start_adjust_dim { #1 }
668     \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_end_adjust_dim { #1 } ,
669 }

```

\WithArrowsOptions is the command of the witharrows package to fix options at the document level. It's possible to fix in \WithArrowsOptions some options specific to {WithArrows} (in contrast with {DispWithArrows}) or specific to {DispWithArrows} (in contrast with {WithArrows}). That's why we have constructed a set of keys specific to \WithArrowsOptions.

```

670  {*LaTeX}
671  \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsOptions { m }
672  {/LaTeX}
673  {*plain-TeX}
674  \cs_set_protected:Npn \WithArrowsOptions #1
675  {/plain-TeX}
676  {
677    \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
678    \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions } { #1 }
679 }
```

## 11.7 The command \Arrow

In fact, the internal command is not named \Arrow but \@@\_Arrow. Usually, at the beginning of an environment {WithArrows}, \Arrow is set to be equivalent to \@@\_Arrow. However, the user can change the name with the option command-name and the user command for \@@\_Arrow will be different. This mechanism can be useful when the user has already a command named \Arrow he still wants to use in the environments {WithArrows} or {DispWithArrows}.

```

680  {*LaTeX}
681  \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow { O { } m ! O { } }
682  {/LaTeX}
683  {*plain-TeX}
684  \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow
685  {
686    \peek_meaning:NTF [
687      { \@@_Arrow_i }
688      { \@@_Arrow_i [ ] }
689    ]
690    \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_i [ #1 ] #2
691    {
692      \peek_meaning:NTF [
693        { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } }
694        { \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } [ ] }
695      ]
696      \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_ii [ #1 ] #2 [ #3 ]
697    {/plain-TeX}
698  }
```

The counter \g\_@@\_arrow\_int counts the arrows in the environment. The incrementation must be global (gincr) because the command \Arrow will be used in the cell of a \halign. It's recalled that we manage a stack for this counter.

```
699  \int_gincr:N \g_@@_arrow_int
```

We will construct a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow. The six fields of this property list are “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”. In order to compute the value of “final” (the destination row of the arrow), we have to take into account a potential option jump. In order to compute the value of the field “status”, we have to take into account options as ll, rl, rr, lr, etc. or new-group.

We will do that job with a first analyze of the options of the command \Arrow with a dedicated set of keys called WithArrows/Arrow/FirstPass.

```

700  \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
701  \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass } { #1 , #3 }
```

We construct now a global property list to store the informations of the considered arrow with the six fields “initial”, “final”, “status”, “options”, “label” and “input-line”.

1. First, the row from which the arrow starts:

```
702 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { initial } \g_@@_line_int
```

2. The row where the arrow ends (that's why it was necessary to analyze the key `jump`):

```
703 \int_set:Nn \l_tmpa_int { \g_@@_line_int + \l_@@_jump_int }
704 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { final } \l_tmpa_int
```

3. The “status” of the arrow, with 3 possible values: empty, `independent`, or `new-group`.

```
705 \prop_put:NnV \l_tmpa_prop { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

4. The options of the arrow (it's a token list):

```
706 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_prop { options } { #1 , #3 }
```

5. The label of the arrow (it's also a token list):

```
707 \prop_put:Nnn \l_tmpa_prop { label } { #2 }
```

6. The number of the line where the command `\Arrow` is issued in the TeX source (as of now, this is only useful for an error message).

```
708 \prop_put:Nnx \l_tmpa_prop { input-line } \msg_line_number:
```

The property list has been created in a local variable for convenience. Now, it will be stored in a global variable indicating both the position-in-the-tree and the number of the arrow.

```
709 \prop_gclear_new:c
710   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
711 \prop_gset_eq:cN
712   { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \g_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
713   \l_tmpa_prop
714 }
```

The command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`) will be available only in the last column of the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In the other columns, the command will be linked to the following command `\@@_Arrow_first_columns`: which will raise an error.

```
715 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_first_columns:
716   { \@@_error:n { Arrow-not~in~last~column } \@@_Arrow }
```

## 11.8 The environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`

### 11.8.1 Code before the `\halign`

The command `\@@_pre_halign:n` is a code common to the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. The argument is the list of options given to the environment.

```
717 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_pre_halign:n #1
```

First, the initialization of `\l_@@_type_env_str` which is the name of the encompassing environment. In fact, this token list is used only in the error messages.

```
718 {
719 (*LaTeX)
720   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
721   \str_set:NV \l_@@_type_env_str \currenvir
722 }/LaTeX)
```

We deactivate the potential externalization of Tikz. The Tikz elements created by `witharrows` can't be externalized since they are created in Tikz pictures with `overlay` and `remember picture`.

```
723 \cs_if_exist:NT \tikz@library@external@loaded
724   { \tikzset { external / export = false } }
```

The token list `\l_@@_name_str` will contain the potential name of the environment (given with the option `name`). This name will be used to create aliases for the names of the nodes.

```
725 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_name_str
```

The parameter `\l_@@_status_arrow_str` will be used to store the "status" of an individual arrow. It will be used to fill the field "status" in the property list describing an arrow.

```
726 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_status_arrow_str
```

The dimension `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used to compute the *x*-value for some vertical arrows when one of the options `i`, `group` and `groups` (values 5, 6 and 7 of `\l_@@_pos_arrow_int`) is used.

```
727 \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_x_dim
```

The variable `\l_@@_input_line_str` will be used only to store, for each command `\Arrow` the line (in the TeX file) where the command is issued. This information will be stored in the field "input-line" of the arrow. As of now, this information is used only in the error message of an arrow impossible to draw (because it arrives after the last row of the environment).

```
728 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_input_line_str
```

The initialization of the counters `\g_@@_arrow_int`, `\g_@@_line_int`, `\g_@@_col_int` and `\g_@@_static_col_int`. However, we have to save their previous values with the stacks created for this end.

```
729 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_arrow_int_seq \g_@@_arrow_int
730 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_arrow_int
731 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_line_int_seq \g_@@_line_int
732 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_line_int
733 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_col_int_seq \g_@@_col_int
734 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
735 \seq_gput_right:NV \g_@@_static_col_int_seq \g_@@_static_col_int
736 \int_gzero:N \g_@@_static_col_int
```

In the preamble of the `\halign`, there will be *two* counters of the columns. The aim of this programmation is to detect the utilisation of a command `\omit` in a cell of the `\halign` (it should be forbidden). For example, in the part of the preamble concerning the third column (if there is a third column in the environment), we will have the following instructions :

```
\int_gincr:N \g_col_int
\int_set:Nn \g_static_col_int 3
```

The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is incremented dynamically and the second is static. If the user has used a command `\omit`, the dynamic incrementation is not done in the cell and, at the end of the row, the difference between the counters may infer the presence of `\omit` at least once.

We also have to update the position on the nesting tree.

```
737 \seq_gput_right:Nn \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq 1
```

The nesting tree is used to create a prefix which will be used in the names of the Tikz nodes and in the names of the arrows (each arrow is a property list of six fields). If we are in the second environment `{WithArrows}` nested in the third environment `{WithArrows}` of the document, the prefix will be 3-2 (although the position in the tree is [3, 2, 1] since such a position always ends with a 1). First, we do a copy of the position-in-the-tree and then we pop the last element of this copy (in order to drop the last 1).

```
738 \seq_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_seq \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
739 \seq_pop_right:NN \l_tmpa_seq \l_tmpa_t1
740 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_prefix_str
741 \str_set:Nx \l_@@_prefix_str { \seq_use:Nnnn \l_tmpa_seq { } }
```

We define the command `\\\` to be the command `\@_cr`: (defined below).

```
742 \cs_set_eq:NN \\ \@_cr:
743 \dim_zero:N \mathsurround
```

These counters will be used later as variables.

```
744 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_initial_int
745 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_final_int
746 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_arrow_int
747 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_pos_of_arrow_int
748 \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_jump_int
```

The counter `\l_@@_jump_int` corresponds to the option `jump`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```
749 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_jump_int \c_one_int
```

The string `\l_@@_format_str` corresponds to the option `format`. Now, we set the initial value for this option.

```
750 \str_set:Nn \l_@@_format_str { rl }
```

In (the last column of) `{DispWithArrows}`, it's possible to put several labels (for the same number of equation). That's why these labels will be stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```
751 /*LaTeX*/
752 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_labels_seq
753 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
754 
```

The value corresponding to the key `interline` is put to zero before the treatment of the options of the environment.<sup>33</sup>

```
755 \skip_zero:N \l_@@_interline_skip
```

The value corresponding to the key `code-before` is put to nil before the treatment of the options of the environment, because, of course, we don't want the code executed at the beginning of all the nested environments `{WithArrows}`. Idem for `code-after`.

```
756 \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_before_tl
757 \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_code_after_tl
```

We process the options given to the environment `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}`.

```
758 \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
759 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
760   { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / WithArrows } { #1 } }
761 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
762   { \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / DispatchWithArrows } { #1 } }
```

Now we link the command `\Arrow` (or the corresponding command with a name given by the user with the option `command-name`: that's why the following line must be after the loading of the options) to the command `\@_Arrow_first_columns`: which will raise an error.

```
763 \cs_set_eq:cN \l_@@_command_name_str \@_Arrow_first_columns:
```

It's only in the last column of the environment that it will be linked to the command `\@_Arrow`.

The counter `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` is the number of columns in the `\halign` (excepted the column for the labels of equations in `{DispWithArrows}` and excepted eventuals other columns in `{WithArrows}` allowed by the option `more-columns`).

```
764 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_nb_cols_int { \str_count:N \l_@@_format_str }
```

---

<sup>33</sup>It's recalled that, by design, the option `interline` of an environment doesn't apply in the nested environments.

Be careful! The following counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be used for two usages:

- during, the construction of the preamble of the `\halign`, it will be used as counter for the number of the column under construction in the preamble (since the preamble is constructed backwards, `\g_@@_col_int` will go decreasing from `\l_@@_nb_cols_int` to 1) ;
- once the preamble constructed, the primitive `\halign` is executed, and, in each row of the `\halign`, the counter `\g_@@_col_int` will be increased from column to column.

```
765 \int_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_col_int \l_@@_nb_cols_int
```

We convert the format in a sequence because we use it as a stack (with the top of the stack at the end of the sequence) in the construction of the preamble.

```
766 \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_format_seq
767 \seq_set_split:NnV \l_@@_format_seq { } \l_@@_format_str
```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```
768 (*LaTeX)
769   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \begin{ savenotes } }
770 
```

We execute the code `\l_@@_code_before_tl` of the option `code-before` of the environment after the eventual `\begin{savenotes}` and, symmetrically, we will execute the `\l_@@_code_after_tl` before the eventual `\end{savenotes}` (we have a good reason for the last point: we want to extract the footnotes of the arrows executed in the `code-after`).

```
771 \l_@@_code_before_tl
```

The command `\spread@equation` is the command used by `amsmath` in the beginning of an alignment to fix the interline. When used, it becomes no-op. However, it's possible to use `witharrows` without `amsmath` since we have redefined `\spread@equation` (if it is not defined yet).

```
772 \spread@equation
773 (*LaTeX)
774   \cs_set_eq:NN \notag \@@_notag:
775   \cs_set_eq:NN \nonumber \@@_nonumber:
776   \cs_set_eq:NN \tag \@@_tag
777   \cs_set_eq:NN \@@_old_label \label
778   \cs_set_eq:NN \label \@@_label:n
779   \cs_set_eq:NN \tagnextline \@@_tagnextline:
780 
```

This is the end of `\@@_pre_halign:n`.

### 11.8.2 The construction of the preamble of the `\halign`

The control sequence `\@@_construct_halign:` will “start” the `\halign` and the preamble. In fact, it constructs all the preamble excepted the end of the last column (more precisely: except the part concerning the construction of the left node and the right node).

The same function `\@@_construct_halign:` will be used both for the environment `{WithArrows}` and the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

Several important points must be noted concerning that construction of the preamble.

- The construction of the preamble is done by reading backwards the format `\l_@@_format_str` and adding the corresponding tokens in the input stream of TeX. That means that the part of the preamble concerning the last cell will be constructed first.
- The function `\@@_construct_halign:` is recursive in order to treat successively all the letters of the preamble.

- Each part of the preamble is created with a `\use:x` function. This expansion of the preamble gives the ability of controlling which parts of the code will be expanded during the construction of the preamble (other parts will be expanded and executed only during the execution of the `\halign`).
- The counter `\g_@@_col_int` is used during the loop of the construction of the preamble but, it will also appears in the preamble (we could have chosen two different counters but this way saves a counter).

```

782 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_halign:
783 {
784     \seq_pop_right:NNTF \l_@@_format_seq \l_@@_type_col_str
785 }

```

Here is the `\use:x` which is fundamental: it will really construct the part of the preamble corresponding to a column by expanding only some parts of the following code.

```

786     \use:x
787     {

```

Before the recursive call of `\@@_construct_halign:`, we decrease the integer `\g_@@_col_bool`. But, during the construction of the column which is constructed first (that is to say which is the last column of the `\halign`), it is *not* lowered because `\int_decr:N`, which is protected, won't be expanded by the `\use:x`.

We begin the construction of a generic column.

```

788     \int_gdecr:N \g_@@_col_int
789     \@@_construct_halign:
790     \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_col_int = \l_@@_nb_cols_int
791     {

```

We redefine the command `\Arrow` (or the name given to the corresponding command by the option `command-name`) in each cell of the last column. The braces around `\l_@@_command_name_str` are mandatory because `\l_@@_command_name_str` will be expanded by the `\use:x` and the command `\cs_set_eq:cN` must still be efficient during the execution of the `\halign`.

```

792         \cs_set_eq:cN { \l_@@_command_name_str } \@@_Arrow
793 (*LaTeX)
794     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
795     {

```

The command `\@@_test_if_to_tag:` (which is protected and, thus, will not be expanded during the construction of the preamble) will test, at each row, whether the current row must be tagged (and the tag will be put in the very last column).

```
    796 \@@_test_if_to_tag:
```

The command `\@@_set_qedhere:` will do a redefinition of `\qedhere` in each cell of the last column.

```

797     \bool_if:NT \c_@@_amsthm_loaded_bool \@@_set_qedhere:
798     {
799 (*LaTeX)
800     }
801     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } \hfil
802     \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { r } \hfill
803     \int_gincr:N \g_@@_col_int
804     \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int { \int_use:N \g_@@_col_int }
805     \c_math_toggle_token
806     {
807     }
808     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle
809     #####
810     }
811     \c_math_toggle_token
812     \int_compare:nNnTF \g_@@_col_int = \l_@@_nb_cols_int
813     {
814     \@@_construct_nodes:
815     {

```

The following glue (\hfil) will be added only if we are not in the last cell because, in the last cell, a glue (=skip) is added between the nodes (in \@@\_construct\_nodes:).

```

815      \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { 1 } \hfil
816      \str_if_eq:VnT \l_@@_type_col_str { c } \hfil
817      \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool { \tabskip = \c_zero_skip }
818      &
819      }
820      }
821  }
```

Now the tokens that will be inserted after the analyze of all the tokens of the format: here is the token \halign.

```

822  {
823      \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
824      {
825          \ialign
826          \bgroup
827      }
828      {
829          \halign to \l_@@_linewidth_dim
830          \bgroup
831          \bool_if:NT \l_@@_fleqn_bool
832          { \skip_horizontal:N \l_@@_mathindent_dim }
833          }
834          \int_gincr:N \g_@@_line_int
835          \int_gzero:N \g_@@_col_int
836          \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
837          {
838              \skip_horizontal:n
839              { \box_wd:N \l_@@_left_brace_box + \l_@@_delim_wd_dim }
840          }
841          \strut
842      }
843  }
```

The command \@@\_construct\_nodes: is only for the lisibility of the code because, in fact, it is used only once. It constructs the “left node” and the “right node” at the end of each row of the arrow.

```

844 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_construct_nodes:
845     {
```

We create the “left node” of the line (when using macros in Tikz node names, the macros have to be fully expandable: here, \int\_use:N is fully expandable).

```

846 \tikz [ remember~picture , overlay ]
847     \node
848     [
849         node~contents = { } ,
850         \c_node_style ,
851         name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - 1 ,
852         alias =
853         {
854             \str_if_empty:NF \l_@@_name_str
855             { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - 1 }
856         }
857     ]
858     ;
859     \hfil
```

Now, after the \hfil, we create the “right node” and, if the option show-node-names is raised, the name of the node is written in the document (useful for debugging).

```

860 \tikz [ remember~picture , overlay ]
861     \node
862     [
```

```

863     node~contents = { } ,
864     @@_node_style ,
865     name = wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r ,
866     alias =
867     {
868         \str_if_empty:NF \l_@@_name_str
869             { \l_@@_name_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
870     }
871 ]
872 ;
873 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_show_node_names_bool
874 {
875     \hbox_overlap_right:n
876     { \small wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - r }
877 }
878 }
```

### 11.8.3 The environment {WithArrows}

```

879 (*LaTeX)
880 \NewDocumentEnvironment { WithArrows } { ! O { } }
881 
```

(/LaTeX)

```

882 (*plain-TeX)
883 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows
884 {
885     \group_begin:
886     \peek_meaning:NTF [
887         { \WithArrows_i }
888         { \WithArrows_i [ ] }
889     ]
890     \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrows_i [ #1 ]
891 
```

(/plain-TeX)

```

892 {
893     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
894     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_in_DisپWithArrows_bool
895 
```

(\*plain-TeX)

```

896     \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_type_env_str
897     \str_set:Nn \l_@@_type_env_str { WithArrows }
898 
```

(/plain-TeX)

```

899     \@@_pre_halign:n { #1 }
900     \if_mode_math: \else:
901         \@@_error:n { WithArrows~outside~math~mode }
902     \fi:
```

The environment begins with a `\vtop`, a `\vcenter` or a `\vbox34` depending of the value of `\l_@@_pos_env_int` (fixed by the options t, c or b). The environment `{WithArrows}` must be used in math mode<sup>35</sup> and therefore, we can use `\vcenter`.

```

903 \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_env_int { 0 \vtop 1 \vcenter 2 \vbox }
904 \bgroup
```

We begin the `\halign` and the preamble. During the construction of the preamble, `\l_tmpa_int` will be incremented during each column constructed.

```

905 \@@_construct_halign:
```

In fact, the construction of the preamble is not finished. We add a little more.

---

<sup>34</sup>Notice that the use of `\vtop` seems color-safe here...

<sup>35</sup>An error is raised if the environment is used outside math mode.

An environment {WithArrows} should have a number of columns equal to the length of its format (by default, 2 since the default format is `r1`). Nevertheless, if the user wants to use more columns (without arrows) it's possible with the option `more-columns`.

```

906   &&
907   \@@_error:n { Too-much-columns-in-WithArrows }
908   \c_math_toggle_token
909   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle
910   { ## }
911   \c_math_toggle_token
912   \cr
913 }
```

We begin the second part of the environment {WithArrows}. We have two `\egroup`: one for the `\halign` and one for the `\vtop` (or `\vcenter` or `\vbox`).

```

914 (*plain-TeX)
915 \cs_new_protected:Npn \endWithArrows
916 {/plain-TeX}
917 {
918   \\
919   \egroup
920   \egroup
921   \@@_post_halign:
```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment {footnote} (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

922 (*LaTeX)
923   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
924 {/LaTeX}
925 (*plain-TeX)
926   \group_end:
927 {/plain-TeX}
928 }
```

This is the end of the environment {WithArrows}.

#### 11.8.4 After the construction of the `\halign`

The command `\@@_post_halign:` is a code common to the second part of the environment {WithArrows} and the environment {DispWithArrows}.

```
929 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_post_halign:
```

The command `\WithArrowsRightX` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```

930 {
931   \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsRightX { \g_@@_right_x_dim }
```

We use `\normalbaselines` of plain-TeX because we have used `\spread@equation` (of `amsmath` or defined directly if `amsmath` is not loaded) and you don't want `\spread@equation` to have effects in the labels of the arrows.

```
932 \normalbaselines
```

If there is really arrows in the environment, we draw the arrows.

```

933 \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_arrow_int > 0
934 {
```

If there is only one arrow, the options `group` and `groups` do not really make sense and it will be quicker to act as if we were in option `i` (moreover, it allows the option `xoffset` for the unique arrow).

```

935 \int_compare:nNnT \g_@@_arrow_int = 1
936 {
937   \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int > 5
938   { \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 5 }
```

```

939         }
940     \@@_scan_arrows:
941 }

```

We will execute the code specified in the option `code-after`, after some settings.

```

942 \group_begin:
943   \tikzset { every-picture / .style = \standard }

```

The command `\WithArrowsNbLines` is not used by `witharrows`. It's only a convenience given to the user.

```

944 \cs_set:Npn \WithArrowsNbLines { \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int }

```

The command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after`, and we have a special version of `\Arrow`, called “`\Arrow in code-after`” in the documentation.<sup>36</sup>

```

945 \cs_set_eq:NN \MultiArrow \@@_MultiArrow:nn
946 \cs_set_eq:cN \l_@@_command_name_str \@@_Arrow_code_after
947 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
948 \l_@@_code_after_tl
949 \group_end:

```

We update the position-in-the-tree. First, we drop the last component and then we increment the last element.

```

950 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
951 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq \l_tmpa_tl
952 \seq_gput_right:Nx \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq
953   { \int_eval:n { \l_tmpa_tl + 1 } }

```

We update the value of the counter `\g_@@_last_env_int`. This counter is used only by the user function `\WithArrowsLastEnv`.

```

954 \int_compare:nNnT { \seq_count:N \g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq } = 1
955   { \int_gincr:N \g_@@_last_env_int }

```

Finally, we restore the previous values of the counters `\g_@@_arrow_int`, `\g_@@_col_int` and `\g_@@_static_col_int`. It is recalled that we manage four stacks in order to be able to do such a restoration.

```

956 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_arrow_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
957 \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_arrow_int \l_tmpa_tl
958 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_line_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
959 \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_line_int \l_tmpa_tl
960 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
961 \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_col_int \l_tmpa_tl
962 \seq_gpop_right:NN \g_@@_static_col_int_seq \l_tmpa_tl
963 \int_gset:Nn \g_@@_static_col_int \l_tmpa_tl
964 }

```

That's the end of the command `\@@_post_halign:`.

### 11.8.5 The command of end of row

We give now the definition of `\@@_cr`: which is the definition of `\` in an environment `{WithArrows}`. The two `expl3` commands `\group_align_safe_begin:` and `\group_align_safe_end:` are specifically designed for this purpose: test the token that follows in an `\halign` structure.

First, we remove an eventual token `*` (just after the `\`: there should not be space between the two) since the commands `\\` and `\\\*` are equivalent in an environment `{WithArrows}` (an environment `{WithArrows}`, like an environment `{aligned}` of `amsmath`, is always unbreakable).

```

965 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr:
966   {
967     \scan_stop:

```

---

<sup>36</sup>As for now, `\MultiArrow` has no option, and that's why its internal name is a name of `expl3` with the signature `:nn` whereas `\Arrow in code-after` provides options and has the name of a function defined with `\NewDocumentCommand`.

We try to detect some `\omit` (as of now, an `\omit` in the last column is not detected).

```

968 \int_compare:nNnF \g_@@_col_int = \g_@@_static_col_int
969   { \@@_error:n { omit~probably~used } }
970 \prg_replicate:nn { \l_@@_nb_cols_int - \g_@@_static_col_int } { & { } }
971 \group_align_safe_begin:
972 \peek_meaning_remove:NTF * \@@_cr_i: \@@_cr_i:
973 }
```

Then, we peek the next token to see if it's a [. In this case, the command \\ has an optional argument which is the vertical skip (=glue) to put.

```

974 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_i:
975   { \peek_meaning:NTF [ \@@_cr_ii: { \@@_cr_ii: [ \c_zero_dim ] } } }
```

Now, we test if the next token is the token `\end`. Indeed, we want to test if the following tokens are `\end{WithArrows}` (or `\end{DispWithArrows}`, etc). In this case, we raise an error because the user must not put \\ at the end of its alignment.

```

976 (*LaTeX)
977 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
978 {
979   \peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF \end
980   {
981     \@@_cr_iii:n { #1 }
```

The analyse of the argument of the token `\end` must be after the `\group_align_safe_end:` which is the beginning of `\@@_cr_iii:n`.

```

982   \@@_analyze_end:Nn
983   }
984   { \@@_cr_iii:n { #1 } }
985 }

986 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_iii:n #1
987 ⟨/LaTeX⟩
988 (*plain-TeX)
989 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_cr_ii: [ #1 ]
990 ⟨/plain-TeX⟩
991 {
992   \group_align_safe_end:
```

For the environment `{DispWithArrows}`, the behaviour of \\ is different because we add the last column which is the column for the tag (number of the equation). Even if there is no tag, this column is used for the v-nodes.<sup>37</sup>

```

993 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool
```

At this stage, we know that we have a tag to put if (and only if) the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` is the comma list `all` (only one element). Maybe, previously, the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` was, for example, `1, last` (which means that only the first line and the last line must be tagged). However, in this case, the comparison with the number of line has be done before and, now, if we are in a line to tag, the value of `\l_@@_tags_clist` is `all`.

```

994 {
995 (*LaTeX)
996   \clist_if_in:NnTF \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
997 }
```

Here, we can't use `\refstepcounter{equation}` because if the user has issued a `\tag` command, we have to use `\l_@@_tag_t1` and not `\theequation`. That's why we have to do the job done by `\refstepcounter` manually.

First, the incrementation of the counter (potentially).

```

998 \tl_if_empty:NT \l_@@_tag_t1 { \int_gincr:N \c@equation }
```

---

<sup>37</sup>The v-nodes are used to compute the abscissa of the right margin, used by the option `wrap-lines`.

We store in `\g_tmpa_t1` the tag we will have to compose at the end of the line. We use a global variable because we will use it in the *next* cell (after the `&`).

```
999   \cs_gset:Npx \g_tmpa_t1
1000    { \tl_if_empty:NTF \l_@@_tag_t1 \theequation \l_@@_tag_t1 }
```

It's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why the different labels of a same line are stored in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```
1001  \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1002   {
```

Now, we do the job done by `\refstepcounter` and by the redefinitions of `\refstepcounter` done by some packages (the incrementation of the counter has been done yet).

First an action which is in the definition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1003  \cs_set:Npx \c@currentlabel { \p@equation \g_tmpa_t1 }
```

Then, an action done by `hyperref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`.

```
1004  \bool_if:NT \c_@@_hyperref_loaded_bool
1005   {
1006    \str_set:Nn \This@name { equation }
1007    \hyper@refstepcounter { equation }
1008   }
```

Then, an action done by `cleveref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`. The package `cleveref` creates in the `aux` file a command `\cref@currentlabel` similar to `\c@currentlabel` but with more informations.

```
1009  \bool_if:NT \c_@@_cleveref_loaded_bool
1010   {
1011    \cref@constructprefix { equation } \cref@result
1012    \protected@edef \cref@currentlabel
1013     {
1014      [
1015       \cs_if_exist:NTF \cref@equation@alias
1016         \cref@equation@alias
1017         { equation }
1018      ]
1019      [ \arabic { equation } ] [ \cref@result ]
1020        \p@equation \g_tmpa_t1
1021     }
1022   }
```

Now, we can issue the command `\label` (some packages may have redefined `\label`, for example `typedref`) for each item in the sequence of the labels (it's possible with `witharrows` to put several labels to the same line and that's why the labels are in the sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`).

```
1023  \seq_map_function:NN \l_@@_labels_seq \c@old_label
1024 }
```

We save the booleans `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` and `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` because they will be used in the *next* cell (after the `&`). We recall that the cells of a `\halign` are TeX groups.

```
1025  \c@_save:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1026  \c@_save:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1027  \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1028   {
1029    \openup -\jot
1030    \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool
1031    \notag \\ &
1032   }
1033 &
1034 \c@_restore:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1035 \c@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1036 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1037   { \hbox_overlap_left:n \c@_qedhere_i: }
1038 \cs_set_eq:NN \theequation \g_tmpa_t1
1039 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1040   { \cs_set_eq:NN \tagform@ \prg_do_nothing: }
```

We use `\@eqnnum` (we recall that there are two definitions of `\@eqnnum`, a standard definition and another, loaded if the class option `leqno` is used). However, of course, the position of the v-node is not the same whether the option `leqno` is used or not. That's here that we use the flag `\c_@@_leqno_bool`.

```

1041         \hbox_overlap_left:n
1042         {
1043             \bool_if:NF \c_@@_leqno_bool
1044             {
1045                 \tikz [ @@_standard ]
1046                     \coordinate ( \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v ) ;
1047             }
1048             \quad
1049             \@eqnnum
1050         }
1051         \bool_if:NT \c_@@_leqno_bool
1052         {
1053             \tikz [ @@_standard ]
1054                 \coordinate ( \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v ) ;
1055         }
1056     }
1057     {
1058         \@@_save:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1059     
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

1060     &
1061     {*LaTeX}
1062         \@@_restore:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1063         \bool_if:NT \l_@@_qedhere_bool
1064             { \hbox_overlap_left:n \@@_qedhere_i: }
1065 
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

1066         \tikz [ @@_standard ]
1067             \coordinate ( \int_use:N \g_@@_line_int - v ) ;
1068 
```

`(*LaTeX)`

```

1069     }
1070 
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

1071     }
1072     \dim_compare:nNnT { #1 } < \c_zero_dim
1073         { \@@_error:n { option~of~cr~negative } }
1074
1075     \cr
1076     \noalign
1077     {
1078         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn { #1 } \c_zero_dim }
1079         \skip_vertical:n { \l_tmpa_dim + \l_@@_interline_skip }
1080         \scan_stop:
1081     }
1082 }
```

According to the documentation of `expl3`, the previous addition in “`#1 + \l_@@_interline_skip`” is really an addition of skips (=glues).

The following command will be used when, after a `\` (and its optional arguments) there is a `\end`. You want to know if this is the end of the environment `{WithArrows}` (or `{DispWithArrows}`, etc.) because, in this case, we will explain that the environment must not be ended by `\`. If it is not the case, that means it's a classical situation of LaTeX environments not correctly imbricated and there will be a LaTeX error.

```

1083     {*LaTeX}
1084     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_analyze_end:Nn #1 #2
1085     {
1086         \exp_args:NV \str_if_eq:nnT \l_@@_type_env_str { #2 }
1087         {
1088             \@@_error:n { newline~at~the~end~of~env }
1089             \group_begin:
1090             \globaldefs = 1
1091             \@@_msg_redirect_name:nn { newline~at~the~end~of~env } { none }
1092             \group_end:
```

```

1093     }
1094     \end{#2}
1095   }
1096 
```

### 11.8.6 The environment {DispWithArrows}

For the environment {DispWithArrows}, the general form of the construction is of the type:

```
\[\vtop{\halign to \displaywidth {...}}\]
```

The purpose of the \vtop is to have an environment unbreakable.

However, if we are juste after an item of a LaTeX list or at the beginning of a {minipage}, the construction is slightly different:

```
\[\vtop{\halign to \linewidth {...}}\]
```

The boolean \l\_@@\_in\_label\_or\_minipage\_bool will be raised if we are just after a \item of a list of LaTeX or at the beginning of a {minipage}.

```

1097 (*LaTeX)
1098 \bool_new:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1099 
```

- 1100 (\*LaTeX)
- 1101 \NewDocumentEnvironment { DispWithArrows } { ! d < > ! O { } }
- 1102
- 1103 (\*plain-TeX)
- 1104 \cs\_new\_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows
 {
 \group\_begin:
 \peek\_meaning:NTF <
 { \DispWithArrows\_i }
 { \DispWithArrows\_i < \c\_novalue\_tl > }
 }
 \cs\_new\_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows\_i < #1 >
 {
 \peek\_meaning:NTF [
 { \DispWithArrows\_ii < #1 > }
 { \DispWithArrows\_ii < #1 > [ ] }
 ]
 \cs\_new\_protected:Npn \DispWithArrows\_ii < #1 > [ #2 ]
 }
- 1112
- 1113 (\*plain-TeX)
 \str\_clear\_new:N \l\_@@\_type\_env\_str
 \str\_set:Nn \l\_@@\_type\_env\_str { DispWithArrows }
- 1114

If mathtools has been loaded with the option `showonlyrefs`, we disable the code of mathtools for the option `showonlyrefs` with the command `\MT_showonlyrefs_false:` (it will be reactivated at the end of the environment).

```

1125 (*LaTeX)
1126   \bool_if:nT \c_@@_mathtools_loaded_bool
1127   {
1128     \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1129     {
1130       \MT_showonlyrefs_false:
1131       \MH_set_boolean_T:n { show_only_refs }
1132     }
1133   }

```

However, we have to re-raise the flag `{show_only_refs}` of mhsetup because it has been switched off by `\MT_showonlyrefs_false:` and we will use it in the code of the new version of `\label`.

```

1131   \MH_set_boolean_T:n { show_only_refs }
1132 }
1133 }
```

An action done by `typedref` in its redefinition of `\refstepcounter`. The command `\sr@name` is a prefix added to the name of the label by the redefinition of `\label` done by `typedref`.

```
1134     \bool_if:NT \c_@@_typedref_loaded_bool { \str_set:Nn \sr@name { equation } }
```

The command `\intertext@` is a command of `amsmath` which loads the definition of `\intertext`.

```
1135     \bool_if:NT \c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool \intertext@  
1136 
```

```
1137     \exp_args:No \tl_if_no_value:nF { #1 } { \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_left_brace_tl { #1 } }  
1138     \c_@@_pre_halign:n { #2 }
```

If `subequations` is used, we encapsulate the environment in an environment `{subequations}` of `amsmath`.

```
1139 
```

```
1140     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_subequations_bool { \begin{subequations} }
```

```
1141 
```

Since the version 1.16 of `witharrows`, no space is added between an `\item` of a LaTeX list and an environment `{DispWithArrows}` except with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items` stored in the boolean `\l_@@_sbwi_bool`. We have to know if we are just after an `\item` and this information will be stored in `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool`.

```
1142 
```

```
1143     \bool_if:NF \l_@@_sbwi_bool  
1144     {  
1145         \if@inlabel  
1146             \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool  
1147             \fi  
1148             \if@minipage  
1149                 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool  
1150                 \fi  
1151     }  
1152 
```

```
1153 
```

```
1154     \tl_if_eq:NNF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_no_value_tl  
1155     {  
1156         \hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box  
1157         {
```

We compute the value of the width of the left delimiter.

```
1155         \hbox_set:Nn \l_tmpa_box  
1156         {
```

Even if the default value of `\nulldelimiterspace` is 1.2 pt, we take it into account.

```
1157         \group_begin:  
1158             \dim_set_eq:NN \nulldelimiterspace \c_zero_dim  
1159             \c_math_toggle_token  
1160             \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl \vcenter to 1 cm { } \right.  
1161             \c_math_toggle_token  
1162             \group_end:  
1163         }  
1164         \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_delim_wd_dim  
1165         \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_delim_wd_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }  
1166         \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_left_brace_box  
1167         \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_left_brace_box  
1168         {  
1169             \group_begin:  
1170                 \cs_set_eq:NN \label \c_@@_old_label  
1171                 \c_math_toggle_token  
1172                 \bool_if:NT \l_@@_displaystyle_bool \displaystyle  
1173                 \l_@@_left_brace_tl  
1174                 { }  
1175                 \c_math_toggle_token  
1176             \group_end:  
1177         }  
1178     }
```

The token list `\l_@@_tag_tl` will contain the argument of the command `\tag`.

```
1179 
```

```
1180     \tl_clear_new:N \l_@@_tag_tl
```

```
1181 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool
```

The boolean `\l_@@_tag_star_bool` will be raised if the user uses the command `\tag` with a star.

```
1182 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_tag_star_bool
1183 </LaTeX>
1184 \if_mode_math:
1185   \@@_fatal:n { DispWithArrows-in-math-mode }
1186 \fi:
```

The construction is not exactly the same whether we are just after an `\item` of a LaTeX list or not. We know if we are after an `\item` thanks to the boolean `\l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool`.

```
1187 (*plain-TeX)
1188   \dim_zero_new:N \linewidth
1189   \dim_set_eq:NN \linewidth \displaywidth
1190 </plain-TeX>
1191 (*LaTeX)
1192   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1193     { \c_math_toggle_token }
1194   {
1195 </LaTeX>
```

We don't use `\[` of LaTeX because some extensions, like `autonum`, do a redefinition of `\[`. However, we put the following lines which are in the definition of `\[` even though they are in case of misuse.

```
1196   \if_mode_vertical:
1197     \nointerlineskip
1198     \hbox_to_wd:nn { .6 \linewidth } { }
1199   \fi:
1200   \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token
1201 (*LaTeX)
1202   }
1203 </LaTeX>
1204   \dim_zero_new:N \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1205 (*LaTeX)
1206   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1207     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \linewidth }
1208     { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth }
1209 </LaTeX>
1210 (*plain-TeX)
1211   \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_linewidth_dim \displaywidth
1212 </plain-TeX>
1213   \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_halign_box
1214   \setbox \l_@@_halign_box \vtop \bgroup
1215   \tabskip =
1216     \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1217       \c_zero_skip
1218       { 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt }
1219   \@@_construct_halign:
1220   \tabskip = 0 pt plus 1000 pt minus 1000 pt
1221 &
```

If the user tries to use more columns than the length of the format, we have to raise an error. However, the error won't be in the next column which is the columns for the labels of the equations. The error will be after... and it must be after. That means that we must not have an error in the next column simply because we are not in math mode. That's why this column, even if it is for the labels, is in math mode.

```
1222 $ ## $
1223 \tabskip = \c_zero_skip
1224 &&
1225 \@@_fatal:n { Too-much-columns-in-DispWithArrows }
1226 \bool_if:nT \c_false_bool { ## }
1227 \cr
1228 }
```

We begin the second part of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1229  {*plain-TeX}
1230  \cs_new_protected:Npn \endDispWithArrows
1231  {/plain-TeX}
1232  {
1233  {*LaTeX}
1234  \clist_if_in:NnT \l_@@_tags_clist { last }
1235  { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1236 {/LaTeX}
1237 \\
```

The following `\egroup` is for the `\halign`.

```

1238  \egroup
1239  \unskip \unpenalty \unskip \unpenalty
1240  \box_set_to:last:N \l_tmpa_box
1241  \nointerlineskip
1242  \box_use:N \l_tmpa_box
1243  \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_alignment_dim
1244  \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_tmpa_box }
1245  \box_clear_new:N \l_@@_new_box
1246  \hbox_set:Nn \l_@@_new_box { \hbox_unpack_clear:N \l_tmpa_box }
1247  \dim_compare:nNnT
1248  { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } < \g_@@_alignment_dim
1249  { \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_alignment_dim { \box_wd:N \l_@@_new_box } }
```

The `\egroup` is for the box `\l_@@_halign_box`.

```

1250  \egroup
1251  \tl_if_eq:NNTF \l_@@_left_brace_tl \c_novalue_tl
1252  { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1253  {
1254  \hbox_to_wd:nn \l_@@_linewidth_dim
1255  {
1256  \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_fleqn_bool
1257  { \skip_horizontal:n \l_@@_mathindent_dim }
1258  \hfil
1259  \hbox_to_wd:nn \g_@@_alignment_dim
1260  {
1261  \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_left_brace_box
1262  \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
1263  {
1264  \box_ht:N \l_@@_halign_box
1265  + \box_dp:N \l_@@_halign_box
1266  }
1267  \group_begin:
1268  \dim_set_eq:NN \nulldelimerspace \c_zero_dim
1269  \c_math_toggle_token
1270  \left \l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl
1271  \vcenter to \l_tmpa_dim { \vfil }
1272  \right.
1273  \c_math_toggle_token
1274  \group_end:
1275  \hfil
1276  }
1277  \hfil
1278  }
1279  \skip_horizontal:n { - \l_@@_linewidth_dim }
1280  \vcenter { \box_use_drop:N \l_@@_halign_box }
1281 }
```

We compute the dimension `\g_@@_right_x_dim`. As a first approximation, `\g_@@_right_x_dim` is the *x*-value of the right side of the current composition box. In fact, we must take into account the potential labels of the equations. That's why we compute `\g_@@_right_x_dim` with the v-nodes of each row specifically built in this goal. `\g_@@_right_x_dim` is the minimal value of the *x*-value of these nodes.

```

1282   \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_right_x_dim
1283   \dim_gset_eq:NN \g_@@_right_x_dim \c_max_dim
1284 (*LaTeX)
1285   \begin { tikzpicture } [ @@_standard ]
1286 (/LaTeX)
1287 (*plain-TeX)
1288   \tikzpicture [ @@_standard ]
1289 (/plain-TeX)
1290   \int_step_variable:nNn \g_@@_line_int \l_tmpa_int
1291   {
1292     \cs_if_free:cTF
1293     { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \l_tmpa_int - v }
1294     { \@@_fatal:n { Inexistent~v-node } }
1295     {
1296       \tikz@parse@node\pgfutil@firstofone ( \l_tmpa_int - v )
1297       \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x
1298       \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpa_dim < \g_@@_right_x_dim
1299       { \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_right_x_dim \l_tmpa_dim }
1300     }
1301   }
1302 (*LaTeX)
1303   \end { tikzpicture }
1304 (/LaTeX)
1305 (*plain-TeX)
1306   \endtikzpicture
1307 (/plain-TeX)

```

The code in `\@@_post_halign:` is common to `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1308 \@@_post_halign:
1309 (*LaTeX)
1310   \bool_if:nT \c_@@_mathtools_loaded_bool
1311   { \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs } \MT_showonlyrefs_true: }
1312   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_label_or_minipage_bool
1313   {
1314     \c_math_toggle_token
1315     \skip_vertical:N \belowdisplayskip
1316   }
1317   { \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token }
1318 (/LaTeX)
1319 (*plain-TeX)
1320   \c_math_toggle_token \c_math_toggle_token
1321 (/plain-TeX)
1322 (*LaTeX)
1323   \bool_if:NT \l_@@_subequations_bool { \end { subequations } }

```

If the option `footnote` or the option `footnotehyper` is used, then we extract the footnotes with an environment `{savenotes}` (of the package `footnote` or the package `footnotehyper`).

```

1324   \bool_if:NT \g_@@_footnote_bool { \end { savenotes } }
1325 (/LaTeX)
1326 (*plain-TeX)
1327   \group_end:
1328 (/plain-TeX)
1329 (*LaTeX)
1330   \ignorespacesafterend
1331 (/LaTeX)
1332   }

```

With the environment `{DispWithArrows*}`, the equations are not numbered. We don't put `\begin{DispWithArrows}` and `\end{DispWithArrows}` because there is a `\@currenvir` in some error messages.

```

1333 (*LaTeX)
1334 \NewDocumentEnvironment { DispWithArrows* } { }
1335 {
1336   \WithArrowsOptions { notag }
1337   \DispWithArrows
1338 }
1339 \endDispWithArrows
1340 
```

## 11.9 The commands `\tag`, `\notag`, `\label`, `\tagnextline` and `\qedhere` for `{DispWithArrows}`

Some commands are allowed only in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}`. We write a command `\@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` to execute this command only if we are in the last column. If we are in another column, an error is raised. The first argument of `\@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn` is the name of the command used in the error message and the second is the code to execute.

```

1341 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn #1 #2
1342 {
1343   \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_in_WithArrows_bool
1344     { \@_error:nn { Not-allowed-in-WithArrows } { #1 } }
1345   {
1346     \int_compare:nNnTF \g_@@_col_int < \l_@@_nb_cols_int
1347       { \@_error:nn { Not-allowed-in-DispWithArrows } { #1 } }
1348       { #2 }
1349   }
1350 }
```

The command `\@_notag:` will be linked to the command `\notag` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1351 (*LaTeX)
1352 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_notag:
1353   { \@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \notag { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist } }
```

The command `\@_nonumber:` will be linked to the command `\nonumber` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1354 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@_nonumber:
1355   { \@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \nonumber { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist } }
```

The command `\@_tag` will be linked to `\tag` in `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. We do the definition with `\NewDocumentCommand` because this command has a starred version.

```

1356 \NewDocumentCommand \@_tag { s m }
1357 {
1358   \@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tag
1359   {
1360     \tl_if_empty:NF \l_@@_tag_tl
1361       { \@_error:nn { Multiple-tags } { #2 } }
1362     \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all }
1363     \bool_if:nT \c_@@_mathtools_loaded_bool
1364     {
1365       \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1366       {
1367         \MH_if_boolean:nF { show_manual_tags }
1368           { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1369     }
```

```

1370         }
1371     \tl_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_tl { #2 }
1372     \bool_set:Nn \l_@@_tag_star_bool { #1 }
1373     \bool_if:nT { #1 && ! \bool_if_p:N \c_@@_amsmath_loaded_bool }
1374     { \@@_error:n { tag*~without~amsmath } }
1375   }
1376 }

```

The command `\@@_label:n` will be linked to `\label` in the environments `{WithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows}`. In these environments, it's possible to put several labels for the same line (it's not possible in the environments of `amsmath`). That's why we store the different labels of a same line in a sequence `\l_@@_labels_seq`.

```

1377 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_label:n #1
1378 {
1379   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \label
1380   {
1381     \seq_if_empty:NF \l_@@_labels_seq
1382     {
1383       \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_cleveref_loaded_bool
1384       { \@@_error:n { Multiple~labels~with~cleveref } }
1385       { \@@_error:n { Multiple~labels } }
1386     }
1387     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_labels_seq { #1 }
1388   \bool_if:nT \c_@@_mathtools_loaded_bool
1389   {
1390     \MH_if_boolean:nT { show_only_refs }
1391     {
1392       \cs_if_exist:cTF { MT_r_#1 }
1393       { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1394       { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1395     }
1396   }
1397   \bool_if:nT \c_@@_autonum_loaded_bool
1398   {
1399     \cs_if_exist:cTF { autonum@#1Referenced }
1400     { \clist_set:Nn \l_@@_tags_clist { all } }
1401     { \clist_clear:N \l_@@_tags_clist }
1402   }
1403 }
1404 }

```

The command `\@@_tagnextline:` will be linked to `\tagnextline` in `{DispWithArrows}`.

```

1405 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_tagnextline:
1406 {
1407   \@@_if_in_last_col_of_disp:Nn \tagnextline
1408   { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_tag_next_line_bool }
1409 }

```

The environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}` are compliant with the command `\qedhere` of `amsthm`. However, this compatibility requires a special version of `\qedhere`.

This special version is called `\@@_qedhere:` and will be linked with `\qedhere` in the last column of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` (only if the package `amsthm` has been loaded). `\@@_qedhere:` raises the boolean `\l_@@_qedhere_bool`.

```

1410 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere: { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_qedhere_bool }
1411 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_set_qedhere: { \cs_set_eq:NN \qedhere \@@_qedhere: }

```

---

<sup>38</sup>There are two versions of `\eqnnum`, a standard version and a version for the option `leqno`.

In the last column of the `\halign` of `{DispWithArrows}` (column of the labels, that is to say the numbers of the equations), a command `\@@_qedhere_i:` will be issued if the flag `\l_@@_qedhere_bool` has been raised. The code of this command is an adaptation of the code of `\qedhere` in `amsthm`.

```
1412 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_qedhere_i:
1413 {
1414     \group_begin:
1415         \cs_set_eq:NN \qed \qedsymbol
```

The line `\cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt` is a preparation for an action on the QED stack. Despite its form, the instruction `\QED@stack` executes an operation on the stack. This operation prints the QED symbol and nullify the top of the stack.

```
1416     \cs_set_eq:NN \qed@elt \setQED@elt
1417         \QED@stack \relax \relax
1418     \group_end:
1419 }
1420 
```

## 11.10 We draw the arrows

The arrows are divided in groups. There is two reasons for this division.

- If the option `group` or the option `groups` is used, all the arrows of a group are drawn on a same vertical at an abscissa of `\l_@@_x_dim`.
- For aesthetic reasons, the starting point of all the starting arrows of a group is raised upwards by the value `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`. Idem for the ending arrows.

If the option `group` is used (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we scan the arrows twice: in the first step we only compute the value of `\l_@@_x_dim` for the whole group, and, in the second step (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int` is set to 8), we divide the arrows in groups (for the vertical adjustement) and we actually draw the arrows.

```
1421 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows:
1422 {
1423     \group_begin:
1424         \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7
1425         {
1426             \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1427                 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 8
1428             }
1429         \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1430         \group_end:
1431     }
```

```
1432 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_scan_arrows_i:
1433 {
```

`\l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int` will be the first arrow of the current group.

`\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int` will be the first line involved in the group of arrows (equal to the initial line of the first arrow of the group because the option `jump` is always positive).

`\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` will be the list the arrows of the group starting at the first line of the group (we may have several arrows starting from the same line). We have to know all these arrows because of the adjustement by `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim`.

`\l_@@_last_line_of_group_int` will be the last line involved in the group (impossible to guess in advance).

`\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` will be the list of all the arrows of the group ending at the last line of the group (impossible to guess in advance).

```
1434     \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1435     \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int
1436     \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1437     \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1438     \seq_clear_new:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
```

The boolean `\l_@@_new_group_bool` is a switch that we will use to indicate that a group is finished (and the lines of that group have to be drawn). This boolean is not directly connected to the option `new-group` of an individual arrow.

```
1439 \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
```

We begin a loop over all the arrows of the environment. Inside this loop, if a group is finished, we will draw the arrows of that group.

```
1440 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int \c_one_int
1441 \int_until_do:nNnn \l_@@_arrow_int > \g_@@_arrow_int
1442 {
```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields “initial”, “final”, “status” and “input-line”. For the two former, we have to do conversions to integers.

```
1443 \prop_get:cnN
1444 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1445 { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1446 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1447 \prop_get:cnN
1448 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1449 { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1450 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl
1451 \prop_get:cnN
1452 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1453 { status } \l_@@_status_arrow_str
1454 \prop_get:cnN
1455 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1456 { input-line } \l_@@_input_line_str
```

We recall that, after the construction of the `\halign`, `\g_@@_line_int` is the total number of lines of the environment. Therefore, the conditional `\l_@@_final_int > \g_@@_line_int` tests whether an arrow arrives after the last line of the environment. In this case, we raise an error (except in the second step of treatment for the option `group`). The arrow will be completely ignored, even for the computation of `\l_@@_x_dim`.

```
1457 \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_final_int > \g_@@_line_int
1458 {
1459     \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8
1460     { \@@_error:n { Too-few-lines-for-an-arrow } }
1461 }
1462 \@@_code_for_possible_arrow:
```

Incrementation of the index of the loop (and end of the loop).

```
1463 \int_incr:N \l_@@_arrow_int
1464 }
```

After the last arrow of the environment, we have to draw the last group of arrows. If we are in option `group` and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`), we don’t draw because, in the first step, we don’t draw anything. If there is no arrow in the group, we don’t draw (this situation occurs when all the arrows of the potential group arrive after the last line of the environment).

```
1465 \bool_if:nT
1466 {
1467     \int_compare_p:n { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int != 7 }
1468     &&
1469     \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int > 0
1470 }
1471 { \@@_draw_arrows:nn \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int \g_@@_arrow_int }
1472 }

1473 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_code_for_possible_arrow:
1474 {
```

We test whether the previous arrow was in fact the last arrow of a group. In this case, we have to draw all the arrows of that group, except if we are with the option `group` and in the first step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7`).

```

1475 \bool_if:nT
1476 {
1477     \int_compare_p:nNn \l_@@_arrow_int > \c_one_int
1478     &&
1479     ( \int_compare_p:n { \l_@@_initial_int > \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int }
1480         &&
1481         \int_compare_p:n { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int != 7 }
1482         ||
1483         \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { new-group }
1484     )
1485 }
1486 {
1487     \int_compare:nNnF \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int = \c_zero_int
1488     {
1489         \@@_draw_arrows:nn
1490         \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int
1491         { \l_@@_arrow_int - 1 }
1492     }
1493     \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1494 }
```

The flag `\l_@@_new_group_bool` indicates if we have to begin a new group of arrows. In fact, we have to begin a new group in three circonstances: if we are at the first arrow of the environment (that's why the flag is raised before the beginning of the loop), if we have just finished a group (that's why the flag is raised in the previous conditionnal, for topological reasons or if the previous arrows had the status "new-group"). At the beginning of a group, we have to initialize the following variables: `\l_@@_first_arrow_int`, `\l_@@_first_line_of_group_int`, `\l_@@_last_line_of_group`, `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq`, `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq`.

```

1495 \bool_if:nTF \l_@@_new_group_bool
1496 {
1497     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_new_group_bool
1498     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_arrow_of_group_int \l_@@_arrow_int
1499     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int \l_@@_initial_int
1500     \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1501     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1502     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1503     \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1504     \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
```

If we are in option `group` and in the second step of treatment (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8`), we don't initialize `\l_@@_x_dim` because we want to use the same value of `\l_@@_x_dim` (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1505     \int_compare:nT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int != 8 }
1506         { \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim } }
1507 }
```

If we are not at the beginning of a new group.

```
1508 {
```

If the arrow is independent, we don't take into account this arrow for the detection of the end of the group.

```

1509     \bool_if:nF
1510         { \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent } }
1511         {
```

If the arrow is not independent, the arrow belongs to the current group and we have to take it into account in some variables.

```

1512     \int_compare:nT
1513         { \l_@@_initial_int = \l_@@_first_line_of_group_int }
```

```

1514     { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_first_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1515     \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_final_int > \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1516     {
1517         \int_set_eq:NN \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int \l_@@_final_int
1518         \seq_clear:N \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1519         \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int
1520     }
1521     {
1522         \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_final_int = \l_@@_last_line_of_group_int
1523             { \seq_put_left:NV \l_@@_last_arrows_seq \l_@@_arrow_int }
1524     }
1525 }
1526 }
```

If the arrow is not independent, we update the current  $x$ -value (in  $\l_@@_x_dim$ ) with the dedicated command  $\text{\@@\_update\_x:nn}$ . If we are in option group and in the second step of treatment ( $\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 8$ ), we don't initialize  $\l_@@_x_dim$  because we want to use the same value of  $\l_@@_x_dim$  (computed during the first step) for all the groups.

```

1527     \bool_if:nF { \str_if_eq_p:Vn \l_@@_status_arrow_str { independent } }
1528     {
1529         \int_compare:nT { \l_@@_pos_arrow_int != 8 }
1530             { \@@_update_x:nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_@@_final_int }
1531     }
1532 }
```

The following code is necessary because we will have to expand an argument exactly 3 times.

```

1533 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \keys_set:nn { n o }
1534 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_keys_set:
1535     { \keys_set_known:no { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass } }
```

The macro  $\text{\@@\_draw\_arrows:nn}$  draws all the arrows whose numbers are between #1 and #2. #1 and #2 must be expressions that expands to an integer (they are expanded in the beginning of the macro). This macro is nullified by the option **no-arrows**.

```

1536 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrows:nn #1 #2
1537     {
1538         \group_begin:
1539         \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_first_arrow_int
1540         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_first_arrow_int { #1 }
1541         \int_zero_new:N \l_@@_last_arrow_int
1542         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_last_arrow_int { #2 }
```

We begin a loop over the arrows we have to draw. The variable  $\l_@@_arrow_int$  (local in the environment **{WithArrows}**) will be used as index for the loop.

```

1543 \int_set:Nn \l_@@_arrow_int \l_@@_first_arrow_int
1544 \int_until_do:nNnn \l_@@_arrow_int > \l_@@_last_arrow_int
1545     {
```

We extract from the property list of the current arrow the fields "initial" and "final" and we store these values in  $\l_@@_initial_int$  and  $\l_@@_final_int$ . However, we have to do a conversion because the components of a property list are token lists.

```

1546     \prop_get:cnN
1547         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1548         { initial } \l_tmpa_tl
1549     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_tmpa_tl
1550     \prop_get:cnN
1551         { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1552         { final } \l_tmpa_tl
1553     \int_set:Nn \l_@@_final_int \l_tmpa_tl
```

If the arrow ends after the last line of the environment, we don't draw the arrow (an error has already been raised in `\@@_scan_arrows:`). We recall that, after the construction of the `\halign`, `\g_@@_line_int` is the total number of lines of the environment).

```
1554     \int_compare:nT { \l_@@_final_int <= \g_@@_line_int } \@@_draw_arrows_i:
1555     \int_incr:N \l_@@_arrow_int
1556   }
1557   \group_end:
1558 }
```

The macro `\@@_draw_arrows_i:` is only for the lisibility of the code. The first `\group_begin:` is for the options of the arrows (but we remind that the options `ll`, `rr`, `rl`, `lr`, `i` and `jump` have already been extracted and are not present in the field `options` of the property list of the arrow).

```
1559 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrows_i:
1560 {
1561   \group_begin:
```

We process the options of the current arrow. The second argument of `\keys_set:nn` must be expanded exactly three times. An x-expansion is not possible because there can be tokens like `\bfseries` in the option `font` of the option `tikz`. This expansion is a bit tricky.

```
1562 \prop_get:cnN
1563   { g_@@_arrow _\l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1564   { options } \l_tmpa_tl
1565   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
1566   \exp_args:NNo \exp_args:No
1567   \@@_keys_set: { \l_tmpa_tl , tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }
```

We create two booleans to indicate the position of the initial node and final node of the arrow in cases of options `rr`, `rl`, `lr` or `ll`:

```
1568 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1569 \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1570 \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
1571   {
1572     0 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
1573     2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
1574     3
1575     {
1576       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1577       \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1578     }
1579 }
```

option	lr	ll	rl	rr	v	i	groups	group
<code>\l_@@_pos_arrow_int</code>	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

The option `v` can be used only in `\Arrow` in `code-after` (see below).

In case of option `i` at a local or global level (`\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5`), we have to compute the *x*-value of the arrow (which is vertical). The computed *x*-value is stored in `\l_@@_x_dim` (the same variable used when the option `group` or the option `groups` is used).

```
1580 \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5
1581 {
1582   \dim_set:Nn \l_@@_x_dim { - \c_max_dim }
1583   \@@_update_x:nn \l_@@_initial_int \l_@@_final_int
1584 }
```

`\l_@@_initial_tl` contains the name of the Tikz node from which the arrow starts (in normal cases... because with the option `i`, `group` and `groups`, the point will perhaps have another *x*-value — but always the same *y*-value). Idem for `\l_@@_final_tl`.

```

1585   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_initial_tl
1586   {
1587     \int_use:N \l_@@_initial_int - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_initial_r_bool rl
1588     .south
1589   }
1590   \tl_set:Nx \l_@@_final_tl
1591   { \int_use:N \l_@@_final_int - \bool_if:NTF \l_@@_final_r_bool rl .north }

```

We use “.south” and “.north” because we want a small gap between two consecutive arrows (and the Tikz nodes created have the shape of small vertical segments: use option `show-nodes` to visualize the nodes).

The label of the arrow will be stored in `\l_tmpa_tl`.

```

1592 \prop_get:cN
1593 { g_@@_arrow _ \l_@@_prefix_str _ \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int _ prop }
1594 { label }
1595 \l_tmpa_tl

```

Now, we have to know if the arrow starts at the first line of the group and/or ends at the last line of the group. That’s the reason why we have stored in `\l_@@_first_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows starting at the first line of the group and in `\l_@@_last_arrows_seq` the list of all the arrows ending at the last line of the group. We compute these values in the booleans `\l_tmpa_bool` and `\l_tmpb_bool`. These computations can’t be done in the following `{tikzpicture}` because the command `\seq_if_in:NnTF` which is *not* expandable.

```

1596 \seq_if_in:NxTF \l_@@_first_arrows_seq
1597 { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1598 { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1599 { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpa_bool }
1600 \seq_if_in:NxTF \l_@@_last_arrows_seq
1601 { \int_use:N \l_@@_arrow_int }
1602 { \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1603 { \bool_set_false:N \l_tmpb_bool }
1604 \int_compare:nNnT \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 5
1605 {
1606   \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpa_bool
1607   \bool_set_true:N \l_tmpb_bool
1608 }

```

We compute and store in `\g_tmpa_tl` and `\g_tmpb_tl` the exact coordinates of the extremities of the arrow.

- Concerning the *x*-values, the abscissa computed in `\l_@@_x_dim` will be used if the option of position is `i`, `group` or `groups`.
- Concerning the *y*-values, an adjustement is done for each arrow starting at the first line of the group and each arrow ending at the last line of the group (with the values of `\l_@@_start_adjust_dim` and `\l_@@_end_adjust_dim`).

```

1609 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim
1610 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_x_final_dim
1611 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim
1612 \dim_gzero_new:N \g_@@_y_final_dim
1613 (*LaTeX)
1614   \begin{tikzpicture} [ @@_standard ]
1615 
1616 (*plain-TeX)
1617   \tikzpicture [ @@_standard ]
1618 
1619   \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone ( \l_@@_initial_tl )
1620   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_initial_dim \pgf@x
1621   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_initial_dim \pgf@y
1622   \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone ( \l_@@_final_tl )
1623   \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_x_final_dim \pgf@x

```

```

1624      \dim_gset:Nn \g_@@_y_final_dim \pgf@y
1625  (*LaTeX)
1626    \end { tikzpicture }
1627 \end{LaTeX}
1628 (*plain-TeX)
1629   \endtikzpicture
1630 \end{plain-TeX}
1631 \bool_if:nTF
1632 { \dim_compare_p:nNn { \g_@@_y_initial_dim - \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1633           > \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim
1634     &&
1635     \int_compare_p:nNn { \l_@@_final_int - \l_@@_initial_int } = 1
1636   }
1637   {
1638     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
1639     {
1640       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1641         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1642         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1643       \dim_eval:n
1644         {
1645           ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1646           + ( \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim / 2 )
1647         }
1648     }
1649     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1650     {
1651       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1652         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1653         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1654       \dim_eval:n
1655         {
1656           ( \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \g_@@_y_final_dim ) / 2
1657           - ( \l_@@_max_length_of_arrow_dim / 2 )
1658         }
1659     }
1660   }
1661   {
1662     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
1663     {
1664       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1665         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_initial_dim }
1666         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1667       \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpa_bool
1668         { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_initial_dim + \l_@@_start_adjust_dim } }
1669         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_initial_dim }
1670     }
1671     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1672     {
1673       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int < 5
1674         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_x_final_dim }
1675         { \dim_use:N \l_@@_x_dim } ,
1676       \bool_if:NTF \l_tmpb_bool
1677         { \dim_eval:n { \g_@@_y_final_dim - \l_@@_end_adjust_dim } }
1678         { \dim_use:N \g_@@_y_final_dim }
1679     }
1680   }

```

Eventually, we can draw the arrow with the code in  $\l_@@_tikz_code_t1$ . We recall that the value by default for this token list is : “`\draw (#1) to node {#3} (#2) ;`”. This value can be modified with the option `tikz-code`. We use the variant `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` of the macro `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn` because of the characters *underscore* in the name `\l_tmpa_tl`: if the user uses the Tikz library `babel`, the third argument of the command `\@@_draw_arrow:nno` will be rescanned because this

third argument will be in the argument of a command `node` of an instruction `\draw` of Tikz... and we will have an error because of the characters *underscore*.<sup>39</sup>

```
1681     \@@_draw_arrow:nno \g_tmpa_tl \g_tmpb_tl \l_tmpa_tl
```

We close the TeX group opened for the options given to `\Arrow[...]` (local level of the options).

```
1682     \group_end:
1683 }
```

The function `\@@_tmpa:nnn` will draw the arrow. It's merely an environment `{tikzpicture}`. However, the Tikz instruction in this environment must be inserted from `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` with the markers #1, #2 and #3. That's why we create a function `\@@_def_function_tmpa:n` which will create the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn`.

```
1684 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_def_function_tmpa:n #1
1685 {
1686     \cs_set:Npn \@@_tmpa:nnn ##1 ##2 ##3
1687     {
1688         (*LaTeX)
1689         \begin{tikzpicture}
1690     
```

```
1691         (*plain-TeX)
1692             \tikzpicture
1693     
```

```
1694     [
1695         \@@_standard ,
1696         every~path / .style = WithArrows / arrow
1697     ]
1698     #1
1699 
```

```
1700     (*LaTeX)
1701         \end{tikzpicture}
1702     
```

```
1703     (*plain-TeX)
1704         \endtikzpicture
1705     
```

```
1706 }
```

When we draw the arrow (with `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`), we first create the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn` and, then, we use the function `\@@_tmpa:nnn`:

```
1707 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn #1 #2 #3
1708 {
```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`).

```
1709 \bool_if:nT { \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool && \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool }
1710 { \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl }
```

Now, the main lines of this function `\@@_draw_arrow:nnn`.

```
1711 \exp_args:NV \@@_def_function_tmpa:n \l_@@_tikz_code_tl
1712 \@@_tmpa:nnn { #1 } { #2 } { #3 }
1713 }
1714 \cs_generate_variant:Nn \@@_draw_arrow:nnn { n n o }
```

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, we have to use a special version of `\l_@@_tikz_code_tl` (which corresponds to the option `tikz-code`).

```
1715 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl
1716 {
```

---

<sup>39</sup>There were other solutions: use another name without *underscore* (like `\ltmpat1`) or use the package `underscore` (with this package, the characters *underscore* will be rescanned without errors, even in text mode).

First, we draw the arrow without the label.

```
1717     \draw ( #1 ) to node ( @@_label ) { } ( #2 ) ;
```

We retrieve in `\pgf@x` the abscissa of the left-side of the label we will put.

```
1718     \tikz@parse@node \pgfutil@firstofone ( @@_label.west )
```

We compute in `\l_tmpa_dim` the maximal width possible for the label. Here is the use of `\g_@@_right_x_dim` which has been computed previously with the v-nodes.

```
1719     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
1720         { \g_@@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - \pgfkeysvalueof { / pgf / inner-xsep } }
```

We retrieve in `\g_tmpa_tl` the current value of the Tikz parameter “text width”.<sup>40</sup>

```
1721     \path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
```

Maybe the current value of the parameter “text width” is shorter than `\l_tmpa_dim`. In this case, we must use “text width” (we update `\l_tmpa_dim`).

```
1722     \tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl
1723     {
1724         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpb_dim \g_tmpa_tl
1725         \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpb_dim < \l_tmpa_dim
1726             { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
1727     }
```

Now, we can put the label with the right value for “text width”.

```
1728     \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpa_dim > \c_zero_dim
1729     {
1730         \path ( @@_label.west )
1731             node [ anchor = west , text-width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ]
1732                 { #3 } ;
1733     }
1734 }
```

The command `\@@_update_x:nn` will analyze the lines between #1 and #2 in order to modify `\l_@@_x_dim` in consequence. More precisely, `\l_@@_x_dim` is increased if a line longer than the current value of `\l_@@_x_dim` is found. `\@@_update_x:nn` is used in `\@@_scan_arrows:` (for options group and groups) and in `\@@_draw_arrows:nn` (for option i).

```
1735 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_update_x:nn #1 #2
1736     {
1737         \int_step_inline:nnn { #1 } { #2 }
1738         {
1739             (*LaTeX)
1740                 \begin { tikzpicture } [ @@_standard ]
1741             
1742             (*plain-TeX)
1743                 \tikzpicture [ @@_standard ]
1744             
1745                 \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone ( ##1 - 1 )
1746                 \dim_gset:Nn \g_tmpa_dim { \dim_max:nn \l_@@_x_dim \pgf@x }
1747             (*LaTeX)
1748                 \end { tikzpicture }
1749             
1750             (*plain-TeX)
1751                 \endtikzpicture
1752             
1753                 \dim_set_eq:NN \l_@@_x_dim \g_tmpa_dim
1754             }
1755 }
```

---

<sup>40</sup>In fact, it's not the current value of “text width”: it's the value of “text width” set in the option `tikz` provided by `witharrows`. These options are given to Tikz in a “every path”. That's why we have to retrieve it in a path.

The command `\WithArrowsLastEnv` is not used by the package `witharrows`. It's only a facility given to the final user. It gives the number of the last environment `{WithArrows}` at level 0 (to the sense of the nested environments). This macro is fully expandable and, thus, can be used directly in the name of a Tikz node.

```
1756 \cs_new:Npn \WithArrowsLastEnv { \int_use:N \g_@@_last_env_int }
```

## 11.11 The command `\Arrow in code-after`

The option `code-after` is an option of the environment `{WithArrows}` (this option is only available at the environment level). In the option `code-after`, one can use the command `Arrow` but it's a special version of the command `Arrow`. For this special version (internally called `\@@_Arrow_code_after`), we define a special set of keys called `WithArrows/Arrow/code-after`.

```
1757 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
1758 {
1759     tikz .code:n =
1760         \tikzset { WithArrows / arrow / .append-style = { #1 } } ,
1761     tikz .value_required:n = true ,
1762     rr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1763     rr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 0 ,
1764     ll .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1765     ll .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 1 ,
1766     rl .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1767     rl .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 2 ,
1768     lr .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1769     lr .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 3 ,
1770     v .value_forbidden:n = true ,
1771     v .code:n = \@@_fix_pos_option:n 4 ,
1772     tikz-code .tl_set:N = \l_@@_tikz_code_tl ,
1773     tikz-code .value_required:n = true ,
1774     xoffset .dim_set:N = \l_@@_xoffset_dim ,
1775     xoffset .value_required:n = true ,
1776     unknown .code:n =
1777         \@@_sort_seq:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
1778         \@@_error:n { Unknown~option~Arrow~in~code-after }
1779 }
```

A sequence of the options available in `\Arrow in code-after`. This sequence will be used in the error messages and can be modified dynamically.

```
1780 \seq_new:N \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
1781 \@@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq
1782 { ll, lr, rl, rr, tikz, tikz-code, v, x, offset }

1783 (*LaTeX)
1784 \NewDocumentCommand \@@_Arrow_code_after { O{ } m m m ! O{ } }
1785 (/LaTeX)
1786 (*plain-TeX)
1787 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after
1788 {
1789     \peek_meaning:NTF [
1790         { \@@_Arrow_code_after_i }
1791         { \@@_Arrow_code_after_i [ ] }
1792     ]
1793     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_i [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4
1794     {
1795         \peek_meaning:NTF [
1796             { \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } }
1797             { \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] { #2 } { #3 } { #4 } [ ] }
1798     }
1799     \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_Arrow_code_after_ii [ #1 ] #2 #3 #4 [ #5 ]
```

```

1800 </plain-TeX>
1801 {
1802   \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int 1
1803   \str_clear_new:N \l_@@_previous_key_str
1804   \group_begin:
1805     \keys_set:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / code-after }
1806       { #1, #5, tikz = { xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim } }
1807     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1808     \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1809     \int_case:nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int
1810       {
1811         0
1812         {
1813           \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool
1814           \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool
1815         }
1816         2 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_initial_r_bool }
1817         3 { \bool_set_true:N \l_@@_final_r_bool }
1818       }

```

We prevent drawing an arrow from a line to itself.

```

1819   \tl_if_eq:nnTF { #2 } { #3 }
1820     { \@@_error:nn { Both-lines-are-equal } { #2 } }

```

We test whether the two Tikz nodes (#2-1) and (#3-1) really exist. If not, the arrow won't be drawn.

```

1821   {
1822     \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #2 - 1 }
1823       { \@@_error:n { Wrong-line-in-Arrow } { #2 } }
1824     {
1825       \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - #3 - 1 }
1826         { \@@_error:n { Wrong-line-in-Arrow } { #3 } }
1827     {
1828       \int_compare:nNnTF \l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 4
1829         {
1830   (*LaTeX)
1831           \begin{tikzpicture} [ @@_standard ]
1832   (/LaTeX)
1833   (*plain-TeX)
1834           \tikzpicture [ @@_standard ]
1835   (/plain-TeX)
1836           \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone (#2-1.south)
1837           \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x
1838           \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpb_dim \pgf@y
1839           \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone (#3-1.north)
1840           \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim
1841             { \dim_max:nn \l_tmpa_dim \pgf@x }
1842           \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
1843             { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \l_tmpb_dim }
1844           \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1845             { \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
1846   (*LaTeX)
1847           \end{tikzpicture }
1848   (/LaTeX)
1849   (*plain-TeX)
1850           \endtikzpicture
1851   (/plain-TeX)
1852         }
1853         {
1854   (*LaTeX)
1855           \begin{tikzpicture} [ @@_standard ]
1856   (/LaTeX)
1857   (*plain-TeX)
1858           \tikzpicture [ @@_standard ]

```

```

1859 </plain-TeX>
1860     \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone
1861         ( #2-\bool_if:NTF\l_@@_initial_r_bool rl .south )
1862     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl
1863         { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
1864     \tikz@scan@one@point \pgfutil@firstofone
1865         ( #3-\bool_if:NTF\l_@@_final_r_bool rl .north )
1866     \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpb_tl
1867         { \dim_use:N \pgf@x , \dim_use:N \pgf@y }
1868 /*LaTeX<
1869     \end{tikzpicture}
1870 </LaTeX>
1871 /*plain-TeX<
1872     \endtikzpicture
1873 </plain-TeX>
1874     }
1875     \@@_draw_arrow:nnn \g_tmpa_tl \g_tmpb_tl { #4 }
1876   }
1877 }
1878 }
1879 \group_end:
1880 }

```

## 11.12 The command \MultiArrow in code-after

The command \@@\_MultiArrow:nn will be linked to \MultiArrow when the code-after is executed.

```

1881 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow:nn #1 #2
1882 {

```

The user of the command \MultiArrow (in code-after) will be able to specify the list of lines with the same syntax as the loop \foreach of pgffor. First, we test with a regular expression whether the format of the list of lines is correct.

```

1883 \exp_args:Nnx
1884     \regex_match:nnTF
1885     { \A \d+ (\,\d+)* ( \, \.\.\. (\,\d+)* )* \Z }
1886     { #1 }
1887     { \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn { #1 } { #2 } }
1888     { \@@_error:n { Invalid~specification~for~MultiArrow } { #1 } }
1889 }
1890 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow_i:nn #1 #2
1891 {

```

That's why we construct a "clist" of expl3 from the specification of list given by the user. The construction of the "clist" must be global in order to exit the \foreach and that's why we will construct the list in \g\_tmpa\_clist.

```

1892 \foreach \x in { #1 }
1893 {
1894     \cs_if_free:cTF { pgf@sh@ns@wa - \l_@@_prefix_str - \x - 1 }
1895     { \@@_error:n { Wrong-line-specification-in-MultiArrow } \x }
1896     { \clist_gput_right:Nx \g_tmpa_clist \x }
1897 }

```

We sort the list \g\_tmpa\_clist because we want to extract the minimum and the maximum.

```

1898 \int_compare:nTF { \clist_count:N \g_tmpa_clist < 2 }
1899 { \@@_error:n { Too-small-specification-for-MultiArrow } }
1900 {
1901     \clist_sort:Nn \g_tmpa_clist
1902     {
1903         \int_compare:nTF { ##1 > ##2 }
1904             \sort_return_swapped:
1905             \sort_return_same:
1906     }

```

We extract the minimum in `\l_tmpa_tl` (it must be an integer but we store it in a token list of `expl3`).

```
1907     \clist_pop:NN \g_tmpa_clist \l_tmpa_tl
```

We extract the maximum in `\l_tmpb_tl`. The remaining list (in `\g_tmpa_clist`) will be sorted in decreasing order but never mind...

```
1908     \clist_reverse:N \g_tmpa_clist
1909     \clist_pop:NN \g_tmpa_clist \l_tmpb_tl
```

We draw the teeth of the rak (except the first one and the last one) with the auxiliary function `\@@_MultiArrow_i:n`. This auxiliary fonction is necessary to expand the specification of the list in the `\foreach` loop. The first and the last teeth of the rak can't be drawn the same way as the others (think, for example, to the case of the option “rounded corners” is used).

```
1910     \exp_args:NV \@@_MultiArrow_i:n \g_tmpa_clist
```

Now, we draw the rest of the structure.

```
1911 (*LaTeX)
1912     \begin{tikzpicture}
1913 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1914     \tikzpicture
1915 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1916     [
1917         @@
1918         standard ,
1919         every path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
1920     ]
1921     \draw [->] ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpa_tl-r.south)
1922             -- +(5mm,0)
1923             -- node (@@_label) {}
1924             ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim+5mm]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south)
1925             -- ([xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\l_tmpb_tl-r.south) ;
1926     \tikz@parse@node \pgfutil@firstofone (@@_label.west)
1927     \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { 20 cm }
1928     \path \pgfextra { \tl_gset:Nx \g_tmpa_tl \tikz@text@width } ;
1929     \tl_if_empty:NF \g_tmpa_tl { \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim \g_tmpa_tl }
1930     \bool_if:nT { \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool && \l_@@_in_DispatchWithArrows_bool }
1931     {
1932         \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpb_dim
1933             { \g_@@_right_x_dim - \pgf@x - 0.3333 em }
1934         \dim_compare:nNnT \l_tmpb_dim < \l_tmpa_dim
1935             { \dim_set_eq:NN \l_tmpa_dim \l_tmpb_dim }
1936     }
1937     \path (@@_label.west)
1938         node [ anchor = west, text width = \dim_use:N \l_tmpa_dim ] { #2 } ;
1939 
```

`(*LaTeX)`

```
1940     \end{tikzpicture}
1941 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1942     \endtikzpicture
1943 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1944 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1945     }
1946 }
1947 \cs_new_protected:Npn \@@_MultiArrow_i:n #1
1948 {
1949 
```

`(*LaTeX)`

```
1950     \begin{tikzpicture}
1951 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1952     \tikzpicture
1953 
```

`(*plain-TeX)`

```
1954     [
1955         @@
1956         standard ,
1957         every path / .style = { WithArrows / arrow }
1958     ]
```

```

1959 \foreach \k in { #1 }
1960 {
1961   \draw [ <- ]
1962     ( [xshift = \l_@@_xoffset_dim]\k-r.south ) -- ++(5mm,0) ;
1963 }
1964 {*LaTeX}
1965   \end{tikzpicture}
1966 
1967 {*plain-TeX}
1968   \endtikzpicture
1969 
1970 }

```

### 11.13 The error messages of the package

```

1971 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_option_ignored_str
1972   { If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored. }
1973 \str_const:Nn \c_@@_command_ignored_str
1974   { If~you~go~on,~this~command~will~be~ignored. }
1975 {*LaTeX}
1976 \@@_msg_new:nn { amsmath-not-loaded }
1977 {
1978   You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~because~the~
1979   package~'amsmath'~has~not~been~loaded.\\
1980   If~you~go~on,~this~option~will~be~ignored~in~the~rest~
1981   of~the~document.
1982 }
1983 
1984 \@@_msg_new:nn { Bad~value~for~replace~brace~by }
1985 {
1986   Bad~value~for~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'.~The~value~must~begin~
1987   with~an~extensible-left~delimiter.~The~possible~values~are:~,~,
1988   \token_to_str:N \{,~,~,~\token_to_str:N \lbrace,~
1989   \token_to_str:N \lbrack,~,~\token_to_str:N \lgroup,~
1990   \token_to_str:N \langle,~,~\token_to_str:N \lmoustache,~
1991   \token_to_str:N \lfloor,~and~\token_to_str:N \lceil
1992   (and~\token_to_str:N \lvert,~and~\token_to_str:N \lVert\\
1993   if~amsmath~or~unicode-math~is~loaded~in~LaTeX).\\
1994   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
1995 }
1996 \@@_msg_new:nn { option-of-cr-negative }
1997 {
1998   The~argument~of~the~command~\token_to_str:N\\-
1999   should~be~positive~in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\\
2000   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2001   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2002 }
2003 \@@_msg_new:nn { omit-probably-used }
2004 {
2005   There~is~a~problem.~Maybe~you~have~used~a~command~
2006   \token_to_str:N\omit~in~the~line~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\\
2007   (or~another~line)~of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2008   You~can~go~on~but~you~may~have~others~errors.
2009 }
2010 
2011 \@@_msg_new:nn { newline-at-the-end-of-env }
2012 {
2013   The~environments~of~witharrows~(\{WithArrows\})~and~
2014   \{DispWithArrows\})~should~not~end~by~\token_to_str:N \\.\\
2015   However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.~No~similar~error~will~be~

```

```

2016     raised-in-this-document.
2017   }
2018 
```

`</LaTeX>`

```

2019 \@@_msg_new:nn { Invalid-option-format }
2020 {
2021   The~key~'format'~should~contain~only~letters~r,~c~and~l~and~
2022   must~not~be~empty.\\
2023   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2024 }

2025 \@@_msg_new:nn { Value-for-a-key }
2026 {
2027   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~should~be~used~without~value. \\
2028   However,~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2029 }

2030 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown-option-in-Arrow }
2031 {
2032   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~unknown~for~the~command~
2033   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str~in~the~row~
2034   \int_use:N~\g_@@_line_int~of~your~environment~
2035   \{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\l_tmpa_str~\\
2036   \c_@@_option_ignored_str~\\
2037   For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>.
2038 }
2039 {
2040   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2041   \seq_use:Nnnn~\l_@@_options_Arrow_seq~{~and~}~{,~}~{~and~}.
2042 }

2043 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown-option-WithArrows }
2044 {
2045   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2046   \c_@@_option_ignored_str~\\
2047   For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>.
2048 }
2049 {
2050   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2051   \seq_use:Nnnn~\l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq~{~and~}~{,~}~{~and~}.
2052 }

2053 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown-option-DispWithArrows }
2054 {
2055   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~unknown~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~\\
2056   \c_@@_option_ignored_str~\\
2057   For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>.
2058 }
2059 {
2060   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2061   \seq_use:Nnnn~\l_@@_options_DispWithArrows_seq~{~and~}~{,~}~{~and~}.
2062 }

2063 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown-option-WithArrowsOptions }
2064 {
2065   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~unknown~in~
2066   \token_to_str:N~\WithArrowsOptions.~\\
2067   \c_@@_option_ignored_str~\\
2068   For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>.
2069 }
2070 {
2071   The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~
2072   \seq_use:Nnnn~\l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq~{~and~}~{,~}~{~and~}.
2073 }

2074 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Unknown-option-Arrow-in-code-after }
2075 {
2076   The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~is~unknown~in~

```

```

2077 \token_to_str:N \Arrow\ in~code~after. \\ 
2078 \c_@@_option_ignored_str \\ 
2079 For~a~list~of~the~available~keys,~type~H~<return>. 
2080 } 
2081 { 
2082 The~available~keys~are~(in~alphabetic~order):~ 
2083 \seq_use:Nnnn \l_@@_options_Arrow_code_after_seq {~and~} {,} {~and~}. 
2084 } 

2085 \@@_msg_new:nn { Too~much~columns~in~WithArrows } 
2086 { 
2087 Your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~has~\int_use:N 
2088 \l_@@_nb_cols_int\ columns~and~you~try~to~use~one~more..~ 
2089 Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_\\backslash{c_\\backslash}~.~ 
2090 If~you~really~want~to~use~more~columns~(after~the~arrows)~you~should~use~ 
2091 the~option~'more-columns'~at~a~global~level~or~for~an~environment. \\ 
2092 However,~you~can~go~one~for~this~time. 
2093 } 

2094 \@@_msg_new:nn { Too~much~columns~in~DispWithArrows } 
2095 { 
2096 Your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~has~\int_use:N 
2097 \l_@@_nb_cols_int\ columns~and~you~try~to~use~one~more..~ 
2098 Maybe~you~have~forgotten~a~\c_\\backslash{c_\\backslash}~.~ 
2099 at~the~end~of~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int. \\ 
2100 This~error~is~fatal. 
2101 } 

2102 \@@_msg_new:nn { Negative~jump } 
2103 { 
2104 You~can't~use~a~negative~value~for~the~option~'jump'~of~command~ 
2105 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\ 
2106 in~the~row~\int_use:N \g_@@_line_int\ 
2107 of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.~ 
2108 You~can~create~an~arrow~going~backwards~with~the~option~'--'~of~Tikz. \\ 
2109 \c_@@_option_ignored_str 
2110 } 

2111 \@@_msg_new:nn { new-group~without~groups } 
2112 { 
2113 You~can't~use~the~option~'new-group'~for~the~command~ 
2114 \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\ 
2115 because~you~are~not~in~'groups'~mode.~Try~to~use~the~option~ 
2116 'groups'~in~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\ 
2117 \c_@@_option_ignored_str 
2118 } 

2119 \@@_msg_new:nn 
2120 { Too~few~lines~for~an~arrow } 
2121 { 
2122 Line~\l_@@_input_line_str\ 
2123 :~an~arrow~specified~in~the~row~\int_use:N \l_@@_initial_int\ 
2124 of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~can't~be~drawn~ 
2125 because~it~arrives~after~the~last~row~of~the~environment. \\ 
2126 If~you~go~on,~this~arrow~will~be~ignored. 
2127 } 

2128 \@@_msg_new:nn { WithArrows~outside~math~mode } 
2129 { 
2130 The~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~should~be~used~only~in~math~mode~ 
2131 like~the~environment~\{aligned\}~of~amsmath. \\ 
2132 Nevertheless,~you~can~go~on. 
2133 } 

2134 \@@_msg_new:nn { DispWithArrows~in~math~mode } 
2135 { 
2136 The~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~should~be~used~only~outside~math~ 
2137 mode~like~the~environment~\{align\}~of~amsmath. \\ 

```

```

2138     This~error~is~fatal.
2139 }
2140 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible~options~in~Arrow }
2141 {
2142     You~try~to~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~but~
2143     this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~
2144     '\l_@@_previous_key_str'~set~in~the~same~command~
2145     \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str. \\
2146     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2147 }
2148 \@@_msg_new:nn { Incompatible~options }
2149 {
2150     You~try~to~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~but~
2151     this~option~is~incompatible~or~redundant~with~the~option~
2152     '\l_@@_previous_key_str'~set~in~the~same~command~
2153     \bool_if:NT \l_@@_in_code_after_bool
2154     {
2155         \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\\
2156         in~the~code~after~of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}\\
2157     }. \\
2158     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2159 }
2160 \@@_msg_new:nn { Arrow~not~in~last~column }
2161 {
2162     You~should~use~the~command~\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\\
2163     only~in~the~last~column~(column~\int_use:N\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~\\
2164     of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}.\\
2165     However~you~can~go~on~for~this~time.
2166 }
2167 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong~line~in~Arrow }
2168 {
2169     The~specification~of~line~'#1'~you~use~in~the~command~\\
2170     \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str\\
2171     in~the~'code~after'~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~doesn't~exist. \\
2172     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2173 }
2174 \@@_msg_new:nn { Both~lines~are~equal }
2175 {
2176     In~the~'code~after'~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~you~try~to~\\
2177     draw~an~arrow~going~to~itself~from~the~line~'#1'.~This~is~not~possible. \\
2178     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2179 }
2180 \@@_msg_new:nn { Wrong~line~specification~in~MultiArrow }
2181 {
2182     The~specification~of~line~'#1'~doesn't~exist. \\
2183     If~you~go~on,~it~will~be~ignored~for~\token_to_str:N~\MultiArrow.
2184 }
2185 \@@_msg_new:nn { Too~small~specification~for~MultiArrow }
2186 {
2187     The~specification~of~lines~you~gave~to~\token_to_str:N~\MultiArrow\\
2188     is~too~small:~you~need~at~least~two~lines. \\
2189     \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2190 }
2191 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not~allowed~in~DispWithArrows }
2192 {
2193     The~command~\token_to_str:N~#1
2194     is~allowed~only~in~the~last~column~\\
2195     (column~\int_use:N\l_@@_nb_cols_int)~of~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2196     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2197 }
2198 \@@_msg_new:nn { Not~allowed~in~WithArrows }

```

```

2198 {
2199   The~command~\token_to_str:N #1 is~not~allowed~in~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~
2200   (it's~allowed~in~the~last~column~of~\{DispWithArrows\}). \\
2201   \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2202 }
2203 (*LaTeX)
2204 \@@_msg_new:nn { tag*~without~amsmath }
2205 {
2206   We~can't~use~\token_to_str:N\tag*~because~you~haven't~loaded~amsmath~
2207   (or~mathtools). \\
2208   If~you~go~on,~the~command~\token_to_str:N\tag\
2209   will~be~used~instead.
2210 }
2211 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~tags }
2212 {
2213   You~can't~use~twice~the~command~\token_to_str:N\tag\
2214   in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2215   If~you~go~on,~the~tag~'#1'~will~be~used.
2216 }
2217 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels }
2218 {
2219   Normally,~we~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N\label\
2220   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2221   However,~you~can~go~on.~
2222   \bool_if:NT \c_@@_showlabels_loaded_bool
2223     { However,~only~the~last~label~will~be~shown~by~showlabels.~}
2224   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~you~can~use~the~option~
2225   'allow-multiple-labels'~at~the~global~or~environment~level.
2226 }
2227 \@@_msg_new:nn { Multiple~labels~with~cleveref }
2228 {
2229   Since~you~use~cleveref,~you~can't~use~the~command~\token_to_str:N\label\
2230   twice~in~a~line~of~the~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}. \\
2231   If~you~go~on,~you~may~have~undefined~references.
2232 }
2233 
```

The following error when the user tries to use the option `xoffset` in mode `group` or `groups` (in fact, it's possible to use the option `xoffset` if there is only *one* arrow: of course, the option `group` and `groups` do not make sense in this case but, maybe, the option was set in a `\WithArrowsOptions`).

```

2242 \@@_msg_new:nn { Option-xoffset-forbidden }
2243 {
2244   You~can't~use~the~option~'xoffset'~in~the~command~\\
2245   \l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str~in~the~row~\int_use:N~\g_@@_line_int~\\
2246   of~your~environment~\{\l_@@_type_env_str\}~\\
2247   because~you~are~using~the~option~\\
2248   ' \int_compare:nNnTF~\l_@@_pos_arrow_int = 7~\\
2249     { group }~\\
2250     { groups }~'.~It's~possible~for~an~independent~arrow~or~if~there~is~\\
2251     only~one~arrow.~\\
2252     \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2253 }
2254 \@@_msg_new:nnn { Duplicate~name }

```

```

2255 {
2256   The~name~'\l_keys_value_tl'~is~already~used~and~you~shouldn't~use~
2257   the~same~environment~name~twice.~You~can~go~on,~but,~
2258   maybe,~you~will~have~incorrect~results. \\
2259   For~a~list~of~the~names~already~used,~type~H~<return>. \\
2260   If~you~don't~want~to~see~this~message~again,~use~the~option~
2261   'allow-duplicate-names'.
2262 }
2263 {
2264   The~names~already~defined~in~this~document~are:~
2265   \seq_use:Nnnn \g_@@_names_seq { ,~ } { ,~ } { ~and~ }.
2266 }

```

## 11.14 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle

A new key defined with \WithArrowsNewStyle will not be available at the local level.

```

2267 {*LaTeX}
2268 \NewDocumentCommand \WithArrowsNewStyle { m m }
2269 {/LaTeX}
2270 {*plain-TeX}
2271 \cs_new_protected:Npn \WithArrowsNewStyle #1 #2
2272 {/plain-TeX}
2273 {
2274   \keys_if_exist:nnTF { WithArrows / Global } { #1 }
2275   { \@@_error:nn { Key~already~defined } { #1 } }
2276   {
2277     \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Global }
2278     {
2279       #1 .code:n =
2280       { \keys_set_known:nn { WithArrows / WithArrowsOptions } { #2 } }
2281     }
2282     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_WithArrows_seq { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2283     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_DisWithArrows_seq
2284     { \tl_to_str:n { #1 } }
2285     \seq_put_right:Nx \l_@@_options_WithArrowsOptions_seq
2286     { \tl_to_str:N { #1 } }

```

We now set the options in a TeX group in order to detect if some keys in #2 are unknown. If a key is unknown, an error will be raised. However, the key will, even so, be stored in the definition of key #1.

```

2287 \group_begin:
2288   \msg_set:nnn { witharrows } { Unknown~option~WithArrowsOptions }
2289   {
2290     The~key~'\l_keys_key_tl'~can't~be~set~in~the~
2291     definition~of~a~style.~You~can~go~on~for~this~time~
2292     but~you~should~suppress~this~key.
2293   }
2294   \WithArrowsOptions { #2 }
2295 \group_end:
2296 }
2297 }
2298 \@@_msg_new:nn { Key~already~defined }
2299 {
2300   The~key~'#1'~is~already~defined. \\
2301   If~you~go~on,~your~instruction~\token_to_str:N\WithArrowsNewStyle\
2302   will~be~ignored.
2303 }

```

## 11.15 The options up and down

The options `up` and `down` are available for individual arrows. The corresponding code is given here. It is independent of the main code of the extension `witharrows`.

This code is the only part of the code of `witharrows` which uses the package `varwidth` and also the Tikz library `calc`. That's why we have decided not to load this package and this library. If they are not loaded, the user will have an error only when using the option `up` or the option `down`.

The token list `\c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl` is the value of `tikz-code` which will be used for an option `up`.

```

2304 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2305 {
2306     \draw [ rounded~corners ]
2307     let \p1 = (#1) ,
2308         \p2 = (#2)
2309     in (\p1) -- node {
2310     /*LaTeX}
2311             \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x2 - \x1 }
2312             \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim

```

`\narrowragged` is a command of the package `varwidth`.

```

2313             \narrowragged
2314             #3
2315             \end{varwidth}
2316     /*TeX}
2317     /*plain-TeX}
2318             #3
2319     /*plain-TeX}
2320             }
2321             (\x2,\y1) -- (\p2) ;
2322     }

```

Idem for the option `down`.

```

2323 \tl_const:Nn \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2324 {
2325     \draw [ rounded~corners ]
2326     let \p1 = (#1) ,
2327         \p2 = (#2)
2328     in (\p1) -- (\x1,\y2) --
2329         node {
2330     /*TeX}
2331             \dim_set:Nn \l_tmpa_dim { \x1 - \x2 }
2332             \begin{varwidth} \l_tmpa_dim
2333                 \narrowragged
2334                 #3
2335             \end{varwidth}
2336     /*TeX}
2337     /*plain-TeX}
2338             #3
2339     /*plain-TeX}
2340             }
2341             (\p2) ;
2342     }

2343 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / FirstPass }
2344 {
2345     up .code:n = \c_@@_set_independent: ,
2346     down .code:n = \c_@@_set_independent: ,
2347     up .default:n = NoValue ,
2348     down .default:n = NoValue
2349 }

2350 \keys_define:nn { WithArrows / Arrow / SecondPass }
2351 {
2352     up .code:n =
2353         \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
2354         {
2355             \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { up }
2356     /*TeX}
2357         \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_varwidth_loaded_bool
2358         {

```

```

2359 </LaTeX>
2360     \cs_if_exist:cTF { tikz@library@calc@loaded }
2361     {
2362         \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int \c_one_int
2363
2364         \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
2365         \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl
2366             \c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl
2367     }
2368     { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2369
2370     {*LaTeX}
2371     {
2372         \l_@@_error:n { varwidth-not-loaded } }
2373
2374     </LaTeX>
2375         },
2376     down .code:n =
2377     \str_if_empty:NT \l_@@_previous_key_str
2378     {
2379         \str_set:Nn \l_@@_previous_key_str { down }
2380
2381     {*LaTeX}
2382     \bool_if:NTF \c_@@_varwidth_loaded_bool
2383     {
2384
2385     </LaTeX>
2386         \cs_if_exist:cTF { tikz@library@calc@loaded }
2387         {
2388             \int_set:Nn \l_@@_pos_arrow_int \c_one_int
2389             \bool_set_false:N \l_@@_wrap_lines_bool
2390             \tl_set_eq:NN \l_@@_tikz_code_tl
2391                 \c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl
2392         }
2393         { \@@_error:n { calc-not-loaded } }
2394
2395     {*LaTeX}
2396         {
2397             \l_@@_error:n { varwidth-not-loaded } }
2398
2399     </LaTeX>
2400         }
2401
2402     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { down }
2403     \seq_put_right:Nn \l_@@_options_Arrow_seq { up }
2404
2405     \@@_msg_new:nn { varwidth-not-loaded }
2406     {
2407         You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~because~
2408         you~don't~have~loaded~the~package~'varwidth'. \\
2409             \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2410     }
2411
2412     \@@_msg_new:nn { calc-not-loaded }
2413     {
2414         You~can't~use~the~option~'\l_keys_key_tl'~because~you~don't~have~loaded~the~
2415             Tikz~library~'calc'.~You~should~add~'\token_to_str:N\usetikzlibrary{calc}'~
2416             ~in~the~preamble~of~your~document. \\
2417             \c_@@_option_ignored_str
2418     }
2419
2420     \@@_msg_new:nn { Invalid-specification-for-MultiArrow }
2421     {
2422         The~specification~of~rows~for~\token_to_str:N\MultiArrow\
2423             (i.e.~#1)~is~invalid. \\
2424             \c_@@_command_ignored_str
2425     }

```

```

2416  (*plain-TeX)
2417  \catcode `@ = 12
2418  \ExplSyntaxOff
2419  
```

## 12 History

### Changes between versions 1.0 and 1.1

Option for the command `\\\` and option `interline`  
 Compatibility with `\usetikzlibrary{babel}`  
 Possibility of nested environments `{WithArrows}`

### Changes between versions 1.1 and 1.2

The package `witharrows` can now be loaded without having loaded previously `tikz` and the libraries `arrow.meta` and `bending` (this extension and these libraries are loaded silently by `witharrows`).  
 New option `groups` (with a *s*)

### Changes between versions 1.2 and 1.3

New options `ygap` and `ystart` for fine tuning.

### Changes between versions 1.3 and 1.4

The package `footnote` is no longer loaded by default. Instead, two options `footnote` and `footnotehyper` have been added. In particular, `witharrows` becomes compatible with `beamer`.

### Changes between versions 1.4 and 1.5

The Tikz code used to draw the arrows can be changed with the option `tikz-code`.  
 Two new options `code-before` and `code-after` have been added at the environment level.  
 A special version of `\Arrow` is available in `code-after` in order to draw arrows in nested environments.  
 A command `\MultiArrow` is available in `code-after` to draw arrows of other shapes.

### Changes between versions 1.5 and 1.6

The code has been improved to be faster and the Tikz library `calc` is no longer required.  
 A new option `name` is available for the environments `{WithArrows}`.

### Changes between 1.6 and 1.7

New environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

### Changes between 1.7 and 1.8

The numbers and tags of the environment `{DispWithArrows}` are now compatible with all the major LaTeX packages concerning references (`autonum`, `cleveref`, `fancyref`, `hyperref`, `prettyref`, `refstyle`, `typedref` and `variorref`) and with the options `showonlyrefs` and `showmanualtags` of `mathtools`.

### Changes between 1.8 and 1.9

New option `wrap-lines` for the environments `{DispWithArrows}` and `{DispWithArrows*}`.

## Changes between 1.9 and 1.10

If the option `wrap-lines` is used, the option “`text width`” of Tikz is still active: if the value given to “`text width`” is lower than the width computed by `wrap-lines`, this value is used to wrap the lines.

The option `wrap-lines` is now fully compatible with the class option `leqno`.

Correction of a bug: `\nointerlineskip` and `\makebox[.6\linewidth]{}{}` should be inserted in `{DispWithArrows}` only in vertical mode.

## Changes between 1.10 and 1.11

New commands `\WithArrowsNewStyle` and `\WithArrowsRightX`.

## Changes between 1.11 and 1.12

New command `\tagnextline`.

New option `tagged-lines`.

An option of position (`ll`, `lr`, `rl`, `rr` or `i`) is now allowed at the local level even if the option `group` or the option `groups` is used at the global or environment level.

Compatibility of `{DispWithArrows}` with `\qedhere` of `amsthm`.

Compatibility with the packages `refcheck`, `showlabels` and `listlbls`.

The option `\AllowLineWithoutAmpersand` is deprecated because lines without ampersands are now always allowed.

## Changes between 1.12 and 1.13

Options `start-adjust`, `end-adjust` and `adjust`.

This version is not strictly compatible with previous ones. To restore the behaviour of the previous versions, one has to use the option `adjust` with the value `0 pt`:

```
\WithArrowsOptions{adjust = Opt}
```

## Changes between 1.13 and 1.14

New options `up` and `down` for the arrows.

Replacement of some options `0 { }` in commands and environments defined with `xparse` by `! 0 { }` (a recent version of `xparse` introduced the specifier `!` and modified the default behaviour of the last optional arguments: <http://www.texdev.net/2018/04/21/xparse-optional-arguments-at-the-end>).

Modification of the code of `\WithArrowsNewStyle` following a correction of a bug in `l3keys` in the version of `l3kernel` of 2019/01/28.

New error message `Inexistent-v-node` to avoid a `pgf` error.

The error `Option incompatible with 'group(s)'` was suppressed in the version 1.12 but this was a mistake since this error is used with the option `xoffset` at the local level. The error is put back.

## Changes between 1.14 and 1.15

Option `new-group` to start a new group of arrows (only available when the environment is composed with the option `groups`).

Tikz externalization is now deactivated in the environments of the extension `witharrows`.<sup>41</sup>

---

<sup>41</sup> Before this version, there was an error when using `witharrows` with Tikz externalization. In any case, it's not possible to externalize the Tikz elements constructed by `witharrows` because they use the options `overlay` and `remember picture`.

## Changes between 1.15 and 1.16

### Option no-arrows

The behaviour of `{DispWithArrows}` after an `\item` of a LaTeX list has been changed : no vertical is added. The previous behaviour can be restored with the option `standard-behaviour-with-items`. A given name can no longer be used for two distinct environments. However, it's possible to deactivate this control with the option `allow-duplicate-names`.

## Changes between 1.16 and 1.17

### Option format.

## Changes between 1.17 and 1.18

New option `<...>` for `{DispWithArrows}`.

Option subequations.

Warning when `{WithArrows}` or `{DispWithArrows}` ends by `\``.

No space before an environment `{DispWithArrows}` if we are at the beginning of a `{minipage}`.

## Changes between 1.18 and 2.0

A version of `witharrows` is available for plain-TeX.

## Changes between 2.0 and 2.1

Option `max-length-of-arrow`.

Validation with regular expression for the first argument of `\MultiArrow`.

## Changes between 2.1 and 2.2

Addition of `\normalbaselines` at the beginning of `\@_post_halign:`.

The warning for an environment ending by `\`` has been transformed in `error`.

# Index

The italic numbers denote the pages where the corresponding entry is described, numbers underlined point to the definition, all others indicate the places where it is used.

Symbols	
<code>\,</code>	1885
<code>\.</code>	1885
<code>\@ commands:</code>	
<code>\@_Arrow</code>	681, 684, 716, 792
<code>\@_Arrow_code_after</code>	946, 1784, 1787
<code>\@_Arrow_code_after_i</code>	1790, 1791, 1793
<code>\@_Arrow_code_after_ii</code>	1796, 1797, 1799
<code>\@_Arrow_first_columns:</code>	715, 763
<code>\@_Arrow_i</code>	687, 688, 690
<code>\@_Arrow_ii</code>	693, 694, 696
<code>\@_MultiArrow:nn</code>	945, 1881
<code>\@_MultiArrow_i:n</code>	1910, 1947
<code>\@_MultiArrow_i:nn</code>	1887, 1890
<code>\g @_alignment_dim</code>	
<td>1243, 1244, 1248, 1249, 1259</td>	1243, 1244, 1248, 1249, 1259
<code>\c @_amsmath_loaded_bool</code>	
<td>226, 406, 426, 1135, 1373</td>	226, 406, 426, 1135, 1373
<code>\c @_amsthm_loaded_bool</code>	797
<code>\@_analyze_end:Nn</code>	982, 1084
<code>\g @_arrow_int</code>	254, 655, 699, 710, 712, 729, 730, 933, 935, 957, 1441, 1471
<code>\l @_arrow_int</code>	746, 1440, 1441, 1444, 1448, 1452, 1455, 1463, 1477, 1491, 1498, 1502, 1504, 1514, 1519, 1523, 1543, 1544, 1547, 1551, 1555, 1563, 1593, 1597, 1601
<code>\g @_arrow_int_seq</code>	253, 729, 956
<code>\c @_autonum_loaded_bool</code>	1397
<code>\c @_cleveref_loaded_bool</code>	1009, 1383
<code>\l @_code_after_tl</code>	479, 757, 948
<code>\l @_code_before_tl</code>	476, 756, 771
<code>\@_code_for_possible_arrow:</code>	1462, 1473
<code>\g @_col_int</code>	258, 733, 734, 765, 788, 790, 803, 804, 812, 835, 961, 968, 1346
<code>\g @_col_int_seq</code>	257, 733, 960
<code>\c @_command_ignored_str</code>	1973, 2188, 2414
<code>\l @_command_name_str</code>	
<td>270, 271, 320, 763, 792, 946</td>	270, 271, 320, 763, 792, 946
<code>\@_construct_halign:</code>	782, 789, 905, 1219
<code>\@_construct_nodes:</code>	813, 844
<code>\@_convert_to_str_seq:N</code>	145, 157, 526

\@\_cr: ..... 742, 965  
\@\_cr\_i: ..... 972, 974  
\@\_cr\_ii: ..... 975, 977, 989  
\@\_cr\_iii:n ..... 981, 984, 986  
\@\_def\_function\_tmpa:n ..... 1684, 1711  
\l\_@@\_delim\_wd\_dim ..... 839, 1164, 1165  
\l\_@@\_displaystyle\_bool ..... 328, 808, 909, 1172  
\@\_draw\_arrow:nmn 385, 1681, 1707, 1714, 1875  
\@\_draw\_arrows:nm ..... 384, 1471, 1489, 1536  
\@\_draw\_arrows\_i: ..... 1554, 1559  
\l\_@@\_end\_adjust\_dim ..... 378, 665, 668, 1677  
\@\_error:n ..... 31, 80,  
90, 301, 342, 353, 429, 459, 472, 484, 488,  
531, 538, 559, 580, 582, 589, 605, 625, 661,  
716, 901, 907, 969, 1073, 1088, 1374, 1384,  
1385, 1460, 1778, 1899, 2367, 2370, 2388, 2391  
\@\_error:nn ..... 34, 35, 1344,  
1347, 1361, 1820, 1823, 1826, 1888, 1895, 2275  
\@\_eval\_if\_allowed:n ..... 294, 304  
\c\_@@\_extensible\_delimiters\_clist ...  
..... 397, 398, 408, 456  
\@\_fatal:n ..... 33, 42, 1185, 1225, 1294  
\l\_@@\_final\_int .....  
..... 745, 1450, 1457, 1500, 1515,  
1517, 1522, 1530, 1553, 1554, 1583, 1591, 1635  
\l\_@@\_final\_r\_bool ..... 286,  
1569, 1572, 1577, 1591, 1808, 1814, 1817, 1865  
\l\_@@\_final\_tl ..... 288, 1590, 1622  
\l\_@@\_first\_arrow\_int ..... 1539, 1540, 1543  
\l\_@@\_first\_arrow\_of\_group\_int .....  
..... 1434, 1469, 1471, 1487, 1490, 1498  
\l\_@@\_first\_arrows\_seq .....  
..... 1437, 1501, 1502, 1514, 1596  
\l\_@@\_first\_line\_of\_group\_int .....  
..... 1435, 1499, 1513  
\@\_fix\_pos\_arrow:n .....  
..... 633, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651  
\@\_fix\_pos\_option:n ..... 303, 359, 361,  
363, 365, 367, 1763, 1765, 1767, 1769, 1771  
\l\_@@\_fleqn\_bool ..... 414, 831, 1216, 1256  
\g\_@@\_footnote\_bool .....  
..... 25, 39, 74, 93, 769, 923, 1324  
\g\_@@\_footnotehyper\_bool ..... 24, 40, 84  
\l\_@@\_format\_seq ..... 766, 767, 784  
\l\_@@\_format\_str ..... 290, 487, 750, 764, 767  
\l\_@@\_halign\_box .....  
..... 1213, 1214, 1252, 1264, 1265, 1280  
\c\_@@\_hyperref\_loaded\_bool ..... 1004  
\@\_if\_in\_last\_col\_of\_disp:Nn .....  
..... 1341, 1353, 1355, 1358, 1379, 1407  
\l\_@@\_in\_DispatchWithArrows\_bool ..... 245,  
761, 794, 817, 894, 993, 1120, 1709, 1930  
\l\_@@\_in\_WithArrows\_bool .....  
..... 244, 759, 823, 893, 1343  
\l\_@@\_in\_code\_after\_bool ..... 246, 947, 2152  
\l\_@@\_in\_first\_columns\_bool ..... 283  
\l\_@@\_in\_label\_or\_minipage\_bool .....  
..... 1098, 1146, 1149, 1192, 1206, 1312  
\@\_info:n ..... 87  
\l\_@@\_initial\_int ..... 744, 1446, 1479,  
1499, 1513, 1530, 1549, 1583, 1587, 1635, 2123  
\l\_@@\_initial\_r\_bool ..... 285,  
1568, 1573, 1576, 1587, 1807, 1813, 1816, 1861  
\l\_@@\_initial\_tl ..... 287, 1585, 1619  
\l\_@@\_input\_line\_str ..... 728, 1456, 2122  
\l\_@@\_interline\_skip ..... 373, 755, 1079  
\l\_@@\_jump\_int ..... 588, 703, 748, 749  
\@\_keys\_set: ..... 1534, 1567  
\@\_label:n ..... 778, 1377  
\l\_@@\_labels\_seq 752, 1001, 1023, 1381, 1387  
\l\_@@\_last\_arrow\_int ..... 1541, 1542, 1544  
\l\_@@\_last\_arrows\_seq .....  
..... 1438, 1503, 1504, 1518, 1519, 1523, 1600  
\g\_@@\_last\_env\_int ..... 249, 955, 1756  
\l\_@@\_last\_line\_of\_group\_int .....  
..... 1436, 1479, 1500, 1515, 1517, 1522  
\l\_@@\_left\_brace\_box .. 839, 1166, 1167, 1261  
\l\_@@\_left\_brace\_tl .....  
.. 242, 243, 535, 836, 1137, 1153, 1173, 1251  
\c\_@@\_leqno\_bool ..... 95, 96, 1043, 1051  
\g\_@@\_line\_int ..... 256,  
266, 702, 703, 731, 732, 834, 851, 855, 865,  
869, 876, 944, 959, 1046, 1054, 1067, 1290,  
1457, 1554, 1999, 2006, 2034, 2099, 2106, 2245  
\g\_@@\_line\_int\_seq ..... 255, 731, 958  
\l\_@@\_linewidth\_dim .....  
..... 829, 1204, 1207, 1208, 1211, 1254, 1279  
\l\_@@\_mathindent\_dim ..... 416, 832, 1257  
\c\_@@\_mathtools\_loaded\_bool .....  
..... 1126, 1310, 1363, 1388  
\l\_@@\_max\_length\_of\_arrow\_dim .....  
..... 307, 1633, 1646, 1657  
\@\_msg\_new:nn ..... 27,  
44, 51, 56, 65, 1976, 1984, 1996, 2003,  
2011, 2019, 2025, 2085, 2094, 2102, 2111,  
2119, 2128, 2134, 2140, 2148, 2159, 2166,  
2173, 2179, 2184, 2190, 2197, 2204, 2211,  
2217, 2227, 2234, 2242, 2298, 2397, 2403, 2410  
\@\_msg\_new:nnn .....  
..... 28, 2030, 2043, 2053, 2063, 2074, 2254  
\@\_msg\_redirect\_name:nn .....  
..... 29, 317, 432, 439, 555, 1091  
\l\_@@\_name\_str .. 474, 725, 854, 855, 868, 869  
\g\_@@\_names\_seq ..... 274, 471, 473, 2265  
\l\_@@\_nb\_cols\_int ..... 289, 764, 765,  
790, 812, 970, 1346, 2088, 2097, 2162, 2194  
\l\_@@\_new\_box ..... 1245, 1246, 1248, 1249  
\l\_@@\_new\_group\_bool .....  
..... 284, 1439, 1493, 1495, 1497  
\@\_nonumber: ..... 775, 1354  
\@\_notag: ..... 774, 1352  
\@\_old\_label ..... 777, 1023, 1170  
\c\_@@\_option\_ignored\_str .....  
..... 1971, 1994, 2001, 2023, 2036,  
2046, 2056, 2067, 2078, 2109, 2117, 2146,  
2157, 2171, 2177, 2195, 2201, 2252, 2401, 2408  
\l\_@@\_options\_Arrow\_code\_after\_seq ..  
..... 1777, 1780, 1781, 2083  
\l\_@@\_options\_Arrow\_seq ..... 339,  
348, 349, 350, 618, 627, 628, 2041, 2395, 2396  
\l\_@@\_options\_DispatchWithArrows\_seq ....  
..... 229, 537, 540, 541, 2061, 2283  
\l\_@@\_options\_WithArrowsOptions\_seq ..  
..... 228, 558, 561, 562, 2072, 2285  
\l\_@@\_options\_WithArrows\_seq .....  
..... 513, 514, 526, 530, 619, 2051, 2282

```

\l_@@_pos_arrow_int ..... 251, 252, 304, 340, 351, 603, 638, 657,
937, 938, 1424, 1427, 1459, 1467, 1481,
1505, 1529, 1570, 1580, 1604, 1640, 1651,
1664, 1673, 1802, 1809, 1828, 2248, 2362, 2383
\l_@@_pos_env_int ... 250, 390, 392, 394, 903
\l_@@_pos_of_arrow_int ..... 747
\g_@@_position_in_the_tree_seq .....
..... 247, 248, 737, 738, 950, 951, 952, 954
\@_post_halign: ..... 921, 929, 1308
\@_pre_halign:n ..... 717, 899, 1138
\l_@@_prefix_str .... 201, 710, 712, 740,
741, 851, 865, 876, 1293, 1444, 1448, 1452,
1455, 1547, 1551, 1563, 1593, 1822, 1825, 1894
\l_@@_previous_key_str 296, 298, 336, 338,
345, 347, 575, 577, 635, 637, 677, 700, 758,
1565, 1803, 2144, 2151, 2353, 2355, 2374, 2376
\@_qedhere: ..... 1410, 1411
\l_@@_qedhere_bool ..... 281,
1026, 1035, 1036, 1058, 1062, 1063, 1181, 1410
\@_qedhere_i: ..... 1037, 1064, 1412
\l_@@_replace_left_brace_by_tl .....
..... 458, 1160, 1270
\@_restore:N ..... 175, 1034, 1035, 1062
\g_@@_right_x_dim .....
.... 931, 1282, 1283, 1298, 1299, 1720, 1933
\@_save:N ..... 159, 1025, 1026, 1058
\l_@@_sbwi_bool ..... 276, 463, 1143
\@_scan_arrows: ..... 940, 1421
\@_scan_arrows_i: ..... 1426, 1429, 1432
\@_set_independent: .....
.... 573, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 2345, 2346
\@_set_qedhere: ..... 797, 1411
\@_set_seq_of_str_from_clist:Nn .....
..... 154, 514, 541, 562, 628, 1781
\l_@@_show_node_names_bool ..... 333, 873
\c_@@_showlabels_loaded_bool ..... 2222
\@_sort_seq:N .. 130, 530, 537, 558, 618, 1777
\l_@@_start_adjust_dim . 375, 664, 667, 1668
\g_@@_static_col_int .....
..... 260, 735, 736, 804, 963, 968, 970
\g_@@_static_col_int_seq .... 259, 735, 962
\l_@@_status_arrow_str ..... 578,
604, 659, 705, 726, 1453, 1483, 1510, 1527
\@_strcmp:nn ..... 123, 127, 136
\l_@@_string_Arrow_for_msg_str .....
..... 272, 273, 321,
2033, 2105, 2114, 2145, 2154, 2161, 2169, 2245
\l_@@_subequations_bool 292, 427, 1140, 1323
\@_tag ..... 776, 1356
\l_@@_tag_next_line_bool .....
..... 280, 753, 1027, 1030, 1408
\l_@@_tag_star_bool .....
..... 279, 1025, 1034, 1039, 1182, 1372
\l_@@_tag_tl .... 998, 1000, 1180, 1360, 1371
\@_tagnewline: ..... 779, 1405
\l_@@_tags_clist 262, 263, 266, 267, 422,
423, 442, 443, 445, 446, 996, 1234, 1235,
1353, 1355, 1362, 1368, 1393, 1394, 1400, 1401
\@_test_if_to_tag: ..... 264, 796
\c_@@_tikz_code_down_tl ..... 2323, 2386
\l_@@_tikz_code_tl .....
.... 324, 643, 1710, 1711, 1772, 2364, 2385
\c_@@_tikz_code_up_tl ..... 2304, 2365
\c_@@_tikz_code_wrap_lines_tl .. 1710, 1715
\@_tmpa:nnn ..... 1686, 1712
\l_@@_type_col_str .. 784, 801, 802, 815, 816
\l_@@_type_env_str ..... 720,
721, 896, 897, 1086, 1122, 1123, 2000,
2007, 2035, 2045, 2055, 2087, 2096, 2107,
2116, 2124, 2130, 2136, 2155, 2163, 2170,
2175, 2194, 2199, 2214, 2220, 2230, 2239, 2246
\c_@@_typedref_loaded_bool ..... 1134
\@_update_x:nn ..... 1530, 1583, 1735
\c_@@_varwidth_loaded_bool .... 2357, 2378
\@_warning:n ..... 32
\l_@@_wrap_lines_bool .....
..... 450, 1709, 1930, 2363, 2384
\l_@@_x_dim ..... 727,
1506, 1582, 1642, 1653, 1666, 1675, 1746, 1753
\g_@@_x_final_dim .. 1610, 1623, 1652, 1674
\g_@@_x_initial_dim .. 1609, 1620, 1641, 1665
\l_@@_xoffset_dim ..... 368,
662, 1567, 1774, 1806, 1921, 1924, 1925, 1962
\g_@@_y_final_dim .....
.... 1612, 1624, 1632, 1645, 1656, 1677, 1678
\g_@@_y_initial_dim .....
.... 1611, 1621, 1632, 1645, 1656, 1668, 1669
\l_@@_ygap_dim ..... 192, 310
\l_@@_ystart_dim ..... 189, 313
\\ ..... 62, 71, 742,
918, 1031, 1237, 1979, 1993, 1998, 2000,
2007, 2014, 2022, 2027, 2035, 2036, 2045,
2046, 2055, 2056, 2066, 2067, 2077, 2078,
2091, 2099, 2108, 2116, 2125, 2131, 2137,
2145, 2156, 2163, 2170, 2176, 2181, 2187,
2194, 2200, 2207, 2214, 2220, 2230, 2237,
2239, 2251, 2258, 2259, 2300, 2400, 2407, 2413
\{ 400, 1988, 2000, 2007, 2013, 2014, 2035, 2045,
2055, 2087, 2096, 2107, 2116, 2124, 2130,
2131, 2136, 2137, 2155, 2163, 2170, 2175,
2194, 2199, 2200, 2214, 2220, 2230, 2239, 2246
\} ..... 2000, 2007, 2013, 2014, 2035, 2045,
2055, 2087, 2096, 2107, 2116, 2124, 2130,
2131, 2136, 2137, 2155, 2163, 2170, 2175,
2194, 2199, 2200, 2214, 2220, 2230, 2239, 2246

\ ..... 53, 1991, 1992, 1999, 2006, 2033, 2034,
2077, 2088, 2097, 2098, 2105, 2106, 2114,
2122, 2123, 2154, 2161, 2169, 2186, 2208,
2213, 2219, 2229, 2236, 2238, 2245, 2301, 2412

A
\A ..... 486, 1885
\arabic ..... 1019
\Arrow ..... 273, 2077
\AtBeginDocument ..... 102, 224, 403

B
\begin ..... 769, 1140, 1285, 1614,
1689, 1740, 1831, 1855, 1912, 1950, 2312, 2332
\belowdisplayskip ..... 1315
\bgroun ..... 826, 830, 904, 1214
bool commands:
\bool_gset_true:N ..... 93

```

\bool_if:NTF . . . . .	74, 84, 226, 426, 759, 761, 769, 794, 797, 808, 817, 823, 831, 873, 909, 923, 993, 1004, 1009, 1027, 1036, 1039, 1043, 1051, 1063, 1134, 1135, 1140, 1143, 1172, 1192, 1206, 1216, 1256, 1312, 1323, 1324, 1343, 1383, 1587, 1591, 1667, 1676, 1861, 1865, 2152, 2222, 2357, 2378	
\bool_if:nTF . . . . .	405, 653, 1126, 1226, 1310, 1363, 1373, 1388, 1397, 1465, 1475, 1495, 1509, 1527, 1631, 1709, 1930	
\bool_if_p:N . . . . .	1373	
\bool_new:N . . . . .	24, 25, 95, 110, 244, 245, 246, 276, 279, 280, 281, 283, 284, 285, 286, 292, 1098	
\bool_set:Nn . . . . .	1372	
\bool_set_false:N . . . . .	117, 753, 894, 1030, 1181, 1182, 1497, 1568, 1569, 1599, 1603, 1807, 1808, 2363, 2384	
\bool_set_true:N . . . . .	96, 113, 427, 893, 947, 1120, 1146, 1149, 1408, 1410, 1439, 1493, 1572, 1573, 1576, 1577, 1598, 1602, 1606, 1607, 1813, 1814, 1816, 1817	
\c_false_bool . . . . .	1226	
\l_tmpa_bool . . . . .	1598, 1599, 1606, 1667	
\l_tmpb_bool . . . . .	1602, 1603, 1607, 1676	
box commands:		
\box_clear_new:N . . . . .	1166, 1213, 1245	
\box_dp:N . . . . .	1265	
\box_ht:N . . . . .	1264	
\box_set_to_last:N . . . . .	1240	
\box_use:N . . . . .	1242	
\box_use_drop:N . . . . .	1252, 1261, 1280	
\box_wd:N . . . . .	839, 1165, 1244, 1248, 1249	
\l_tmpa_box . . . . .	1155, 1165, 1240, 1242, 1244, 1246	
C		
\catcode . . . . .	21, 2417	
char commands:		
\char_generate:nn . . . . .	162, 178	
clist commands:		
\clist_clear:N . . . . .	422, 1353, 1355, 1368, 1394, 1401	
\clist_count:N . . . . .	1898	
\clist_gput_right:Nn . . . . .	1896	
\clist_if_in:NnTF . . . . .	266, 443, 455, 996, 1234	
\clist_map_inline:nn . . . . .	104	
\clist_new:N . . . . .	262, 397	
\clist_pop>NN . . . . .	1907, 1909	
\clist_put_left:Nn . . . . .	446	
\clist_put_right:Nn . . . . .	408	
\clist_remove_all:Nn . . . . .	445	
\clist_reverse:N . . . . .	1908	
\clist_set:Nn . . . . .	263, 267, 398, 423, 442, 1235, 1362, 1393, 1400	
\clist_sort:Nn . . . . .	1901	
\g_tmpa_clist . . . . .	1896, 1898, 1901, 1907, 1908, 1909, 1910	
\coordinate . . . . .	1046, 1054, 1067	
\cr . . . . .	912, 1075, 1227, 2236	
cs commands:		
\cs_generate_variant:Nn . . . . .	35, 100, 101, 1533, 1714	
\cs_gset:Npx . . . . .	999	
\cs_if_exist:NTF . . . . .	723, 1015, 1392, 1399, 2360, 2381	
\cs_if_free:NTF . . . . .	1292, 1822, 1825, 1894	
\cs_new:Npn . . . . .	1756	
\cs_new_protected:Npn . . . . .	27, 28, 29, 31, 32, 33, 34, 123, 127, 130, 145, 154, 159, 175, 233, 264, 294, 303, 573, 633, 684, 690, 696, 715, 717, 782, 844, 883, 890, 915, 929, 965, 974, 977, 986, 989, 1084, 1104, 1111, 1117, 1230, 1341, 1352, 1354, 1377, 1405, 1410, 1411, 1412, 1421, 1432, 1473, 1534, 1536, 1559, 1684, 1707, 1735, 1787, 1793, 1799, 1881, 1890, 1947, 2271	
\cs_set:Npn . . . . .	931, 944, 1686	
\cs_set:Npx . . . . .	1003	
\cs_set_eq:NN . . . . .	236, 384, 385, 742, 763, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 792, 945, 946, 1038, 1040, 1170, 1411, 1415, 1416	
\cs_set_protected:Npn . . . . .	674	
\cs_to_str:N . . . . .	163, 179	
D		
\d . . . . .	1885	
\DeclareOption . . . . .	96, 97	
dim commands:		
\dim_compare:nNnTF . . . . .	1072, 1247, 1298, 1725, 1728, 1934	
\dim_compare_p:nNn . . . . .	1632	
\dim_eval:n . . . . .	1643, 1654, 1668, 1677	
\dim_gset:Nn . . . . .	1244, 1249, 1299, 1620, 1621, 1623, 1624, 1746	
\dim_gset_eq:NN . . . . .	1283	
\dim_gzero_new:N . . . . .	1243, 1282, 1609, 1610, 1611, 1612	
\dim_max:nn . . . . .	1078, 1746, 1841	
\dim_set:Nn . . . . .	662, 667, 668, 1078, 1165, 1262, 1297, 1506, 1582, 1719, 1724, 1840, 1927, 1929, 1932, 2311, 2331	
\dim_set_eq:NN . . . . .	1158, 1189, 1207, 1208, 1211, 1268, 1726, 1753, 1837, 1838, 1935	
\dim_use:N . . . . .	1641, 1642, 1652, 1653, 1665, 1666, 1669, 1674, 1675, 1678, 1731, 1843, 1845, 1863, 1867, 1938	
\dim_zero:N . . . . .	743	
\dim_zero_new:N . . . . .	727, 1164, 1188, 1204	
\c_max_dim . . . . .	1283, 1506, 1582	
\g_tmpa_dim . . . . .	1746, 1753	
\l_tmpa_dim . . . . .	1078, 1079, 1262, 1271, 1297, 1298, 1299, 1719, 1725, 1726, 1728, 1731, 1837, 1840, 1841, 1843, 1845, 1927, 1929, 1934, 1935, 1938, 2311, 2312, 2331, 2332	
\l_tmpb_dim . . . . .	1724, 1725, 1726, 1838, 1843, 1932, 1934, 1935	
\c_zero_dim . . . . .	190, 191, 975, 1072, 1078, 1158, 1268, 1728	
\displaystyle . . . . .	808, 909, 1172	
\displaywidth . . . . .	1189, 1208, 1211	
\DispWithArrows . . . . .	1104, 1337	
DispWithArrows commands:		
\DispWithArrows_i . . . . .	1108, 1109, 1111	
\DispWithArrows_ii . . . . .	1114, 1115, 1117	
\draw . . . . .	325, 644, 1717, 1921, 1961, 2306, 2325	

	<b>E</b>	
\egroup .....	919, 920, 1238, 1250	
else commands:		
\else: .....	900	
\end ..	923, 979, 1094, 1303, 1323, 1324, 1626, 1700, 1748, 1847, 1869, 1940, 1965, 2315, 2335	
\endDispWithArrows .....	1230, 1339	
\endtikzpicture .....		
1306, 1629, 1703, 1751, 1850, 1872, 1943, 1968		
\endWithArrows .....	915	
exp commands:		
\exp_args:NNo .....	1566	
\exp_args:Nnx .....	1883	
\exp_args:No .....	1137, 1566	
\exp_args:NV .....	1086, 1711, 1910	
\ExplSyntaxOff .....	2418	
\ExplSyntaxOn .....	20	
	<b>F</b>	
\fi .....	1147, 1150	
fi commands:		
\fif: .....	902, 1186, 1199	
\foreach .....	1892, 1959	
	<b>G</b>	
\globaldefs .....	431, 1090	
group commands:		
\group_align_safe_begin: .....	971	
\group_align_safe_end: .....	992	
\group_begin: .....		
..... 430, 885, 942, 1089, 1106, 1157, 1169, 1267, 1414, 1423, 1538, 1561, 1804, 2287		
\group_end: 433, 926, 949, 1092, 1162, 1176, 1274, 1327, 1418, 1430, 1557, 1682, 1879, 2295		
	<b>H</b>	
\halign .....	829	
hbox commands:		
\hbox_overlap_left:n .....	1037, 1041, 1064	
\hbox_overlap_right:n .....	875	
\hbox_set:Nn .....	1155, 1167, 1246	
\hbox_to_wd:nn .....	1198, 1254, 1259	
\hbox_unpack_clear:N .....	1246	
\hfil .....	801, 815, 816, 859, 1258, 1275, 1277	
\hfill .....	802	
	<b>I</b>	
\ialign .....	825	
if commands:		
\if_mode_math: .....	900, 1184	
\if_mode_vertical: .....	1196	
\ignorespacesafterend .....	1330	
\input .....	6, 7	
int commands:		
\int_case:nn .....	903, 1570, 1809	
\int_compare:nNnTF .....		
... 134, 790, 812, 933, 935, 937, 954, 968, 1346, 1424, 1457, 1459, 1487, 1515, 1522, 1580, 1604, 1640, 1651, 1664, 1673, 1828, 2248		
\int_compare:nTF .....		
587, 603, 1505, 1512, 1529, 1554, 1898, 1903		
\int_compare_p:n .....	1467, 1479, 1481	
\int_compare_p:nNn 655, 657, 1469, 1477, 1635		
\int_eval:n .....	953	
	<b>J</b>	
\jot .....	235, 371, 1029	
	<b>K</b>	
\k .....	1959, 1962	
keys commands:		
\keys_define:nn 37, 305, 388, 412, 467, 492, 527, 533, 552, 584, 641, 1757, 2277, 2343, 2350		
\keys_if_exist:nnTF .....	2274	
\l_keys_key_tl .....	46, 53, 298, 577, 619, 637, 1978, 1986, 2027, 2032, 2045, 2055, 2065, 2076, 2142, 2149, 2290, 2399, 2405	
\keys_set:nn .....	678, 701, 760, 762, 1533, 1805	
\keys_set_known:nn .....	1535, 2280	
\l_keys_value_tl .....	579, 2256	
	<b>L</b>	
\label .....	777, 778, 1170, 1379, 2219, 2229	
\langle .....	400, 1990	
\brace .....	400, 461, 1988	
\brack .....	400, 1989	
\ceil .....	400, 1991	
\left .....	1160, 1270	
\lfloor .....	400, 1991	
\lgroup .....	400, 1989	
\linewidth .....	1188, 1189, 1198, 1207	
\lmoustache .....	400, 1990	
lua commands:		
\lua_now:n .....	124	
\lVert .....	408, 1992	
\lvert .....	408, 1992	
	<b>M</b>	
math commands:		
\c_math_toggle_token .....		
... 805, 811, 908, 911, 1159, 1161, 1171, 1175, 1193, 1200, 1269, 1273, 1314, 1317, 1320		
\mathsurround .....	743	

MH commands:	
\MH_if_boolean:nTF .....	1128, 1311, 1365, 1367, 1390
\MH_set_boolean_T:n .....	1131
msg commands:	
\msg_error:nn .....	31
\msg_error:nnn .....	34
\msg_fatal:nn .....	33
\msg_info:nn .....	77
\msg_line_number: .....	708
\msg_new:nnn .....	27
\msg_new:nnnn .....	28
\msg_redirect_name:nnn .....	30
\msg_set:nnn .....	2288
\msg_warning:nn .....	32
MT commands:	
\MT_showonlyrefs_false: .....	1130
\MT_showonlyrefs_true: .....	1311
\MultiArrow .....	945, 2182, 2186, 2412
\myfiledate .....	14
\myfileversion .....	15
N	
\narrowraged .....	2313, 2333
\NewDocumentCommand . .....	671, 681, 1356, 1784, 2268
\NewDocumentEnvironment .....	880, 1101, 1334
\noalign .....	1076
\node .....	847, 861
\nointerlineskip .....	1197, 1241
\nonumber .....	775, 1355
\normalbaselines .....	932
\notag .....	774, 1031, 1353
\nulldelimiterspace .....	1158, 1268
O	
\omit .....	2006
\openup .....	235, 1029
P	
\p . .....	2307, 2308, 2309, 2321, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2341
\path .....	1721, 1730, 1928, 1937
peek commands:	
\peek_meaning:NTF .....	686, 692, 886, 975, 1107, 1113, 1789, 1795
\peek_meaning_ignore_spaces:NTF .....	979
\peek_meaning_remove:NTF .....	972
\pgfextra .....	1721, 1928
\pgfkeysvalueof .....	1720
prg commands:	
\prg_do_nothing: .....	236, 606, 608, 610, 612, 614, 1040
\prg_replicate:nn .....	970
\ProcessKeysOptions .....	50
\ProcessOptions .....	98
prop commands:	
\prop_gclear_new:N .....	709
\prop_get:NnN .....	1443, 1447, 1451, 1454, 1546, 1550, 1562, 1592
\prop_gset_eq:NN .....	711
\prop_put:Nnn .....	702, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708
\l_tmpa_prop .....	702, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 713
\ProvidesExplPackage .....	12
Q	
\qed .....	1415
\qedhere .....	1411
\qedsymbol .....	1415
\quad .....	1048
R	
regex commands:	
\regex_match:nnTF .....	486, 1884
\relax .....	1417
\RequirePackage .....	2, 3, 11, 17
\right .....	1160, 1272
S	
scan commands:	
\scan_stop: .....	967, 1080
seq commands:	
\seq_clear:N .....	147, 1501, 1503, 1518
\seq_clear_new:N .....	752, 766, 1437, 1438
\seq_count:N .....	954
\seq_gpop_right:NN .....	950, 951, 956, 958, 960, 962
\seq_gput_left:Nn .....	473
\seq_gput_right:Nn .....	248, 729, 731, 733, 735, 737, 952
\seq_if_empty:NTF .....	1001, 1381
\seq_if_in:NnTF .....	348, 471, 619, 1596, 1600
\seq_item:Nn .....	165, 181
\seq_map_function:NN .....	1023
\seq_map_inline:Nn .....	148
\seq_new:N .....	247, 253, 255, 257, 259, 274, 513, 540, 561, 627, 1780
\seq_pop_left:NN .....	164, 180
\seq_pop_right:NN .....	739
\seq_pop_right:NNTF .....	784
\seq_put_left:Nn .....	150, 1502, 1504, 1514, 1519, 1523
\seq_put_right:Nn .....	228, 229, 349, 1387, 2282, 2283, 2285, 2395, 2396
\seq_remove_all:Nn .....	339, 350
\seq_set_eq:NN .....	152, 738
\seq_set_from_clist:Nn .....	156
\seq_set_split:Nnn .....	101, 161, 177, 767
\seq_sort:Nn .....	132
\seq_use:Nnnn .....	167, 170, 173, 183, 741, 2041, 2051, 2061, 2072, 2083, 2265
\l_tmpa_seq .....	147, 150, 152, 161, 164, 165, 167, 170, 173, 177, 180, 181, 183, 738, 739, 741
\setbox .....	1214
skip commands:	
\skip_horizontal:N .....	832
\skip_horizontal:n .....	838, 1257, 1279
\skip_vertical:N .....	1315
\skip_vertical:n .....	1079
\skip_zero:N .....	755
\c_zero_skip .....	817, 1217, 1223
\small .....	216, 876
sort commands:	
\sort_return_same: .....	142, 1905
\sort_return_swapped: .....	141, 1904
str commands:	
\c_backslash_str .....	322, 2089, 2098
\str_clear:N .....	624
\str_clear_new:N .....	677, 700, 720, 725, 726, 728, 740, 758, 896, 1122, 1565, 1803

\str_const:Nn	1971, 1973
\str_count:N	764
\str_if_empty:N <sub>TF</sub>	296, 336, 345, 575, 635, 854, 868, 2353, 2374
\str_if_eq:nn <sub>TF</sub>	421, 579, 801, 802, 815, 816, 1086
\str_if_eq_p:nn	659, 1483, 1510, 1527
\str_lower_case:n	137, 138
\str_new:N	270, 272, 290
\str_set:Nn	165, 181, 271, 273, 320, 321, 338, 347, 470, 578, 604, 621, 721, 741, 750, 897, 1006, 1123, 1134, 2355, 2376
\str_set_eq:NN	298, 474, 577, 637
\l_tmpa_str	165, 166, 169, 172, 181, 182, 470, 471, 473, 474, 621, 624, 2035
\strut	841
sys commands:	
\sys_if_engine_luatex:TF	121
<b>T</b>	
\tabskip	817, 1215, 1220, 1223
\tag	776, 1358, 2206, 2208, 2213
\tagnextline	779, 1407
TeX and L <sup>A</sup> T <sub>E</sub> X 2 <sub><math>\epsilon</math></sub> commands:	
\@	21, 2417
\@currentlabel	1003
\@currenvir	721
\@eqnnum	1049
\@ifclassloaded	76, 86
\@ifpackageloaded	79, 89, 112
\c@equation	998
\cref@constructprefix	1011
\cref@currentlabel	1012
\cref@equation@alias	1015, 1016
\cref@result	1011, 1019
\hyper@refstepcounter	1007
\if@inlabel	1145
\if@minipage	1148
\intertext@	1135
\p@equation	1003, 1020
\pgf@x	1297, 1620, 1623, 1720, 1746, 1837, 1841, 1863, 1867, 1933
\pgf@y	1621, 1624, 1838, 1845, 1863, 1867
\pgfutil@firstofone	1296, 1619, 1622, 1718, 1745, 1836, 1839, 1860, 1864, 1926
\protected@edef	1012
\qed@elt	1416
\QED@stack	1417
\setQED@elt	1416
\spread@equation	233, 236, 772
\sr@name	1134
>tagform@	1040
\This@name	1006
\tikz@library@external@loaded	723
\tikz@parse@node	1296, 1718, 1926
\tikz@scan@one@point	1619, 1622, 1745, 1836, 1839, 1860, 1864
\tikz@text@width	1721, 1928
tex commands:	
\tex_strcmp:D	128
\theequation	1000, 1038
\tikz	846, 860, 1045, 1053, 1066
\tikzpicture	1288, 1617, 1692, 1743, 1834, 1858, 1915, 1953
\tikzset	185, 195, 204, 209, 331, 355, 645, 724, 943, 1760
tl commands:	
\c_empty_tl	356, 646
\c_novalue_tl	243, 836, 1109, 1153, 1251
\tl_clear_new:N	756, 757, 1180
\tl_const:Nn	1715, 2304, 2323
\tl_gset:Nn	1638, 1649, 1662, 1671, 1721, 1842, 1844, 1862, 1866, 1928
\tl_head:n	454
\tl_if_empty:N <sub>TF</sub>	998, 1000, 1360, 1722, 1929
\tl_if_empty:n <sub>TF</sub>	483
\tl_if_eq:NNT <sub>TF</sub>	836, 1153, 1251
\tl_if_eq:nn <sub>TF</sub>	1819
\tl_if_novalue:n <sub>TF</sub>	1137
\tl_new:N	242, 287, 288
\tl_put_right:Nn	100, 476, 479
\tl_set:Nn	454, 458, 487, 1137, 1371, 1585, 1590
\tl_set_eq:NN	243, 1710, 2364, 2385
\tl_to_str:N	2286
\tl_to_str:n	150, 2282, 2284
\g_tmpa_tl	
999, 1003, 1020, 1038, 1638, 1662, 1681, 1721, 1722, 1724, 1842, 1862, 1875, 1928, 1929	
\l_tmpa_tl	164, 180, 454, 457, 739, 950, 951, 953, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 1445, 1446, 1449, 1450, 1548, 1549, 1552, 1553, 1564, 1567, 1595, 1681, 1907, 1921
\g_tmpb_tl	1649, 1671, 1681, 1844, 1866, 1875
\l_tmpb_tl	1909, 1924, 1925
token commands:	
\token_to_str:N	48, 273, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1998, 2006, 2014, 2066, 2077, 2182, 2186, 2192, 2199, 2206, 2208, 2213, 2219, 2229, 2236, 2237, 2301, 2406, 2412
<b>U</b>	
\unpenalty	1239
\unskip	1239
use commands:	
\use:N	166, 169, 172, 182, 406
\use:n	786
\use_none:nn	384
\use_none:nm	385
\usepackage	81, 91
\usetikzlibrary	9, 2406
<b>V</b>	
\vbox	903
\vcenter	903, 1160, 1271, 1280
\vfil	1271
\vtop	903, 1214
<b>W</b>	
\WithArrows	883
WithArrows commands:	
\WithArrows_i	887, 888, 890
\WithArrowsLastEnv	1756
\WithArrowsNbLines	944
\WithArrowsNewStyle	2268, 2271, 2301
\WithArrowsOptions	48, 671, 674, 1336, 2066, 2294
\WithArrowsRightX	931
<b>X</b>	
\x	1892, 1894, 1895, 1896, 2311, 2321, 2328, 2331

<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
\y ..... 2321, 2328	\z ..... 486, 1885

## Contents

<b>1 Options for the shape of the arrows</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2 Numbers of columns</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3 Precise positioning of the arrows</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4 The options 'up' and 'down' for individual arrows</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>5 Comparison with the environment {aligned}</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>6 Arrows in nested environments</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>7 Arrows from outside environments {WithArrows}</b>	<b>14</b>
<b>8 The environment {DispWithArrows}</b>	<b>16</b>
8.1 The option <...> of DispWithArrows .....	20
<b>9 Advanced features</b>	<b>21</b>
9.1 Utilisation with plain-TeX .....	21
9.2 The option tikz-code : how to change the shape of the arrows .....	21
9.3 The command \WithArrowsNewStyle .....	22
9.4 Vertical positioning of the arrows .....	22
9.5 Footnotes in the environments of witharrows .....	24
9.6 Option no-arrows .....	24
9.7 Note for developpers .....	24
<b>10 Examples</b>	<b>25</b>
10.1 \MoveEqLeft .....	25
10.2 Modifying the shape of the nodes .....	25
10.3 Examples with the option tikz-code .....	26
10.3.1 Example 1 .....	26
10.3.2 Example 2 .....	27
10.3.3 Example 3 .....	27
10.4 Automatic numbered loop .....	28
<b>11 Implementation</b>	<b>29</b>
11.1 Declaration of the package and extensions loaded .....	29
11.2 The packages footnote and footnotehyper .....	30
11.3 The class option leqno .....	31
11.4 Some technical definitions .....	32
11.5 Variables .....	35
11.6 The definition of the options .....	37
11.7 The command \Arrow .....	45
11.8 The environments {WithArrows} and {DispWithArrows} .....	46
11.8.1 Code before the \halign .....	46
11.8.2 The construction of the preamble of the \halign .....	49
11.8.3 The environment {WithArrows} .....	52
11.8.4 After the construction of the \halign .....	53
11.8.5 The command of end of row .....	54
11.8.6 The environment {DispWithArrows} .....	58
11.9 The commands \tag, \notag, \label, \tagnextline and \qedhere for {DispWithArrows} .....	63
11.10 We draw the arrows .....	65
11.11 The command \Arrow in code-after .....	74

11.12The command \MultiArrow in code-after . . . . .	76
11.13The error messages of the package . . . . .	78
11.14The command \WithArrowsNewStyle . . . . .	83
11.15The options up and down . . . . .	83
<b>12 History</b>	<b>86</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>88</b>